

Copyrights/Trademarks

Copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or movies and site (program) or Web page information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use.

Any unauthorized reproduction or editing, and the use of reproduced or edited products, without the copyright of reproduced products or the permission for reproduction or edition by copyright holders, is an infringement of the copyright law and related laws. Such abuse may lead to the payment of damages to the copyright holders and other concerned parties, so please refrain from such usage. Besides the above action, changing, modifying and processing other people's portraits without permission is in breach of portrait rights. Please refrain from reproducing, editing and processing photographs and movies taken or recorded with the FOMA terminal.

Note that filming or recording plays, entertainment, and exhibitions may be prohibited even if for personal use.

Please also be aware of copyrights and portrait rights when releasing filmed or recorded data on Web pages, etc.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "move", "i-mode", "i-cuppli", "i-cuppli DX", "WORLD CALL", "Driving mode", "XWave", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi access", "i-motion", "i-mopera", "i-motion mail", "move ringtone", "Devo-mail", "Chara-den", "i-an me", "i-cuppli search", "i-shot", "i-musea", "Dopa", "short mail (SMS)", "Dual network", "i-stage V live" and "FOMA" "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- miniSD™ is the trademark of SD Association. 
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- LC Font, LC FONT® and the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation. 
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications. 
- T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the C● symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc. The Dialog Clarity technology and WOW technology are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc. 
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR Code is the registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- Macromedia® Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc. is used in this product. Copyright © 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All right reserved. Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Super CCD honeycomb" is a registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- "Dimo" is the trademark or registered trademark of Buena Vista Internet Group.
- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

- Thank you for choosing the FOMA N900IG.
- Please read this Manual for FOMA N900IG carefully before and during using the FOMA N900IG for the effective operation. In particular, thoroughly read and follow the "Safety Precautions" and "Handling and Care" to ensure proper use of your FOMA N900IG terminal.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- FOMA terminals operate using radio waves, so phone calls cannot be made in locations where radio waves cannot be received. You cannot use the FOMA terminal in tunnels, underground areas, inside buildings, and outdoor locations where reception is poor, or out of the service areas. You may also experience difficulties making phone calls from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. When reception is good (i.e. the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, be mindful of not disturbing the people around you.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always the risk of your calls being intercepted by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention for all calls. In this way, even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where signal reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what was actually said.
- It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo shall not be held liable for any loss of stored data.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the results of using SSL. Neither NTT DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as to security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain any damage or loss due to the use of SSL, under no circumstances shall either NTT DoCoMo or the certifier be held responsible for any such damage or loss. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Baltimore Technologies Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Read this manual carefully before using your FOMA N900IG and FOMA card. Before using the battery pack and the various adapters (including the charger), carefully read their respective manuals also. Should you have further questions regarding this manual's, contact NTT DoCoMo at any of the following numbers:

○ Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Centers>

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (In English)

○ You can call this number from any type of phone, including DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
○ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

151 (no area code) (toll free) (In Japanese only)

○ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

Note that the FOMA N900IG is referred to simply as "FOMA terminal" in this manual for FOMA N900IG.

- The Internet function used in this product is NetFront® v3.0 for FOMA. NetFront v3.0 is a product from ACCESS CO., LTD.
- NetFront and **NetFront** are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Software used for this product contains a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- The OBEX function and the Infrared exchange function used in this product is IrFront®. IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Software used for this product contains a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Using your FOMA terminal politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, don't forget to consider the feelings of the people around you.

Always turn your FOMA terminal off in the following situations:

- In places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited
There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Always turn your FOMA terminal off in such places.
○ In aircraft ○ In hospitals
○ Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby or waiting room, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- When you are driving
Using your FOMA terminal while you are driving could cause a traffic accident.
○ If you do not want to turn your FOMA terminal off while you are driving, set it to Driving mode.
- When you are in a crowded place such as on trains in case you may be near the people who is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- When you are in public places such as a theater, cinema or gallery
Using your FOMA terminal in public places where quiet is needed can annoy the people around you.

Be aware of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and the ring tone

- Take care not to speak too loudly when you use your FOMA terminal in quiet locations such as restaurants and hotel lobbies.
- Take care not to obstruct other people when you use your FOMA terminal in shopping areas, etc.

The privacy should be protected

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Use these FOMA functions to avoid offending people around you

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with convenient functions that remove the need to answer incoming calls and mute all the sounds made by the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original Manner mode]

Manner mode mutes the sounds made by the FOMA terminal, such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. In Original Manner mode, you can also change settings by function, such as the record message, vibrator or ring tone. However, neither the Manner mode nor the Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound the cameras make.

[Driving mode]

In this mode, the FOMA terminal plays an announcement informing the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. This promotes safe driving since the FOMA terminal does not ring.

[Vibrator]

This makes the FOMA terminal vibrate rather than ring when a call comes in.

[Record message function]

When you cannot take calls, this function allows the caller to leave a recorded message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice mail service (p.271) and Call forwarding service (p.276).

Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

THIS MODEL PHONE MEETS THE U.S. GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.

Your wireless phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. Your NEC phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6W/kg.* Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the output.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is **0.33 W/kg**, and when worn on the body, is **0.05 W/kg**. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements). While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the government requirement.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after search on FCC ID **A98-FOMA-N900IG**.

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with a NEC accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

******In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kg (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

Trademarks

- Windows® XP is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- "Ormo" is a trademark and a registered trademark of Buena Vista Internet Group.
- ©1986-2004 ARMOR PROJECT/BIRD STUDIO/CHUNSOFT/SQUARE ENIX
All Rights Reserved.
- ©2004 DEVILROBOTS
- The MPEG-4 video function which is used for the movie/f-motion feature with this product is provided for personal use only. Use of this function for commercial gain is prohibited under patent rights. To use this function commercially, contact MPEG LA, LLC (U.S.).
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,339
5,600,754 5,414,795 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

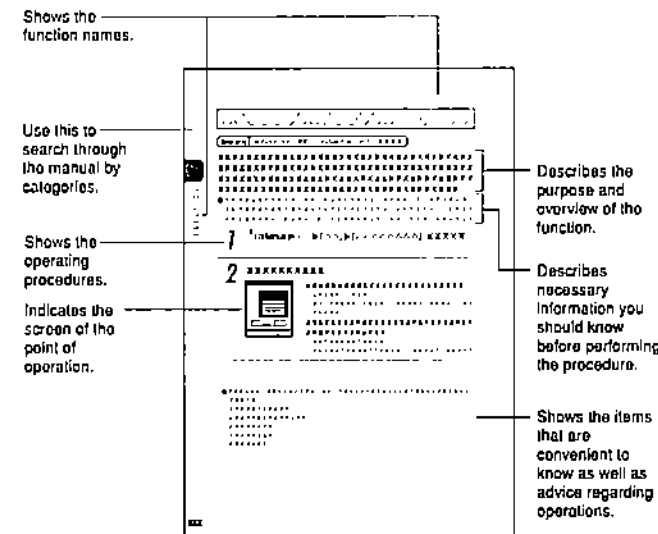
How to Use This Manual

About the symbols (A Quick Manual is provided at the back of this manual. → p.xxx)

This manual uses the symbols shown in the sample page below.

Understanding the meaning of the different symbols will help you use this manual more effectively.

In this manual, the following instructions are used for menu operations: "Select [Menu] ► [Other settings] ► 'Keypad sound'". For specific operations, see "Instructions for menu operations" (p.49) in "About the menus".



About the screen shots used in this manual

- To provide easier readout, the screen shots for the display are shown with the "Stand-by display" (p.177) set to "OFF". In addition, some parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are zoomed in.
- This manual provides the procedures based on the default settings. If you change the settings after purchase, the display of your FOMA terminal may be different from that of this manual.
- The screens shown in this manual are screen images and may differ from the actual screens.

Designation of Windows

- In this manual, Windows® 98 and Windows® 98 SE are designated as Windows 98.
- In this manual, Windows® 2000 Professional is designated as Windows 2000.

The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays.

Contents

Copyrights/Trademarks	1
How to Use This Manual	3
Contents	4
Special Features of the FOMA N900IG	6
Mastering the FOMA N900IG	8
Safety Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)	10
Handling and Care	20
Getting started	23
• Standard package & major optional accessories	
• Components name and functions	
• How to view the display • Menu functions	
• FOMA card • Recharging	
• Attach/remove battery pack • Battery level	
• Power on/off • Setting time • Caller ID	
• ID display, etc.	
Make/receive calls	59
• Making calls • Redial • Speed dial	
• Pause dial • WORLD CALL • International call	
• Reconnect • Receiving calls	
• Record storing	
• Received record • Volume • On hold	
• Driving mode • Record message, etc.	
Videophone call	87
• Making videophone calls	
• Receiving videophone calls	
• Auto switch to voice call	
• Screen setting	
• Remote monitoring, etc.	
Phonebook	101
• Phonebook entry • Phonebook search	
• Group setting • Automatic display	
• Utilities/Group utilities	
• Edit • Delete • FOMA card operation	
• Stored number • Two-touch dial, etc.	
Sound and display settings	123
• Manner mode • Ring tone • Vibrator	
• Voice announce • Key sound • Desktop	
• Display • Display light • Color pattern	
• Illumination • Font, etc.	
Security settings	149
• Security codes • Change security code	
• PIN codes • All lock	
• Secret mode/Secret only mode	
• PIM lock • Keypad dial lock • Self mode	
• Side keys guard	
Other useful functions	171
• Multi access • Multi task • Alarm notification	
• Alarm clock • Schedule • ToDo	
• Original menu • Register own data	
• Check call duration • Text memo • Dictionary	
• Earphone & microphone • Reset settings	
• Available services	
Camera	125
• Still picture • Continuous pictures • Movie	
• Picture voice • Chance capture	
• Camera settings • Bar code reader, etc.	
I-mode	245
• What's I-mode? • I-mode menus • Flash Image	
• My menu • I-mode password	
• Bookmark • Screen memo	
• Downloading image/melody/dictionary	
• Phone to/Mail to/Web to functions	
• I-mode settings, etc.	

Messaging	279
• Mail function • Folder and mail display	
• Compose/send/replay to I-mode mail	
• Create/send Deco mail	
• Mail auto/selected reception	
• Check if you have new I-mode mails	
• Add mail address in Phonebook	
• Inbox/Outbox • Mail record	
• Compose/send SMS • SMS setting	
• Save SMS in FOMA card	
• What's Message service • Receive Msg. item	
• Check if you have new Msg. item	
icuppli	355
• What's icuppli • Download I-cuppli	
• Run I-cuppli • Auto start	
• I-cuppli standby display	
I-motion	379
• What's I-mode • Download I-motion	
• I-mode auto replay setting	
• I-mode type setting, etc.	
Organizing data	385
• Display of saved image • Edit still image	
• Replay movie/I-motion • Edit movie	
• What's Chara-den • Chara-den operation	
• Make Chara-den • Replay melody	
• Data transfer by Ir exchange/cable connection	
• min iSD card, etc.	
Network service	453
• Voice mail • Call forwarding	
• Call waiting • Bar nuisance call	
• Caller ID request • English guidance, etc.	
Data communication	467
• Data communication	
• Install the Communication setting file	
• Setting using FOMA PC setting software	
• Setting without FOMA PC setting software, etc.	
Text entry	499
• Text entry • Kana input mode	
• Kana/Hiragana/Katakana/Alphabet/Numerical	
• Symbol/pictograph	
• Create/Edit common phrases	
• Copy/Paste texts • Kuten code entry	
• Own dictionary • Download dictionary	
• Text entry with the 2-touch method	
• Text entry with the T9 method, etc.	
Available in abroad	627
• Make calls in abroad • Receive calls in abroad	
• Network switch • Set network search	
• Set preferred networks	
• Voice mail • Call forwarding	
• Answer setting during I-mode	
• Answer setting during packet communication	
Appendix	543
• Menu function list • Glossary	
• Letter assignment on Keypads	
• Symbol list • Pictograph list • Face mark list	
• Common phrase list • Frame/marker/stamp list	
• Deco mail image list • Kuten code list	
• Combination in multi access/multi task	
• AT command list • Optional/related accessories	
• Data link software	
• Mailfunction • Error messages	
• Clear settings or data	
• Warranty and follow-up service	
• Software update	
Index/Quick Manual	595

Features of the FOMA N900iG

FOMA (Freedom of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Supports packet transmission at speeds of up to 384 kbps, and high-speed data transmission

- Connecting an external device such as a PC to the FOMA terminal enables speedy packet transmission providing a maximum speed of 384 kbps for downloading.
- An external device such as a PC is necessary for data communication.

Compatible with i-mode service and more user-friendly mail service

- You can comfortably use the site (program) connection services, Internet connection, i-cuppli and i-motion with the high-speed packet communication capability of up to 384 kbps for receiving. Also, SMS (free) used without a specific application for the service and i-mode mail (charged) used as mail through the Internet are available.

- A separate subscription (charged) is required for the i-mode service.

More compatible with multi access and multi task functions

- By Multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call and packet transmission at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service or exchange mails during a call. The FOMA terminal also supports the multi task function that allows multiple applications simultaneously.
- A separate subscription (charged) is required for the i-mode service.
- In addition to multi access, you can use the SMS at the same time.

Supports the FOMA card

- The FOMA card is an IC card that holds your private information such as telephone number. You can use multiple FOMA terminals according to applications by switching your FOMA card.

International Roaming Service

This function features communication services such as voice/video phone calls, i-mode, SMS and packet communication, and useful network services such as the voice mail service, call forwarding service and roaming guidance from abroad.

Videophone

You can talk on the videophone to the other party with videophone-capable terminals face to face. If you switch to the handsfree mode, you can hear the other party's voice from the speaker. By operating Chara-den instead of displaying your own image, you can enjoy making Chara-den do various actions during a call.

It supports the remote monitor with the camera function to check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside, or observe the local conditions such as a plant or operation status from a remote location. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

Camera

You can take pictures (still images), continuous multiple pictures and movies using the two cameras, in-camera and out-camera. The out-camera has a newly-developed VMAICOVICON sensor of 1.23 million recordable pixels (1.24 million valid pixels) and is capable of taking a large picture of 1280 × 960 dots.

It also loads the "Chance capture" function, which records movies retroactively from the point you end shooting, and the "Picture voice" function, which adds voice to pictures (still images) taken. Movies shot with these functions can be sent with i-mode mail.

Speed photo mail

You can send a picture (still image) taken during a voice call to the other party you are talking with easy operation. This function allows you to send not only a picture (still image) taken during a voice call but also a saved picture (still image) in the FOMA terminal.

Deco-mail (Decoration mail)

You can change the color of the character of the body and compose and send mail decorated with subtitle flashing, etc. (Deco-mail). You can also receive Deco-mail to enjoy expressive mail.

i-cuppli DX

You can conveniently use and enjoy i-cuppli by interlocking it with the information of a mobile phone that supports i-mode. For example, you can compose mail on the screen with your favorite character, you can know who has sent the mail from the character's comments, and so on.

miniSD memory card

You can transfer data such as phonebooks, schedule, mail and images between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card. You can also display and/or delete data stored in the miniSD memory card and connect it to a PC to use the miniSD reader/writer function. In addition, the long time movie mode of the camera function allows you to store shot movies directly into the miniSD memory card and shoot movies for up to one hour.

Supports Flash Image

You can display areas with more expressive Flash images. You can also set a Flash image for the standby display.

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function or use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. If the pieces of information read are images or melodies, you can display, play and save them.

Dictionary

3 different dictionaries, English-Japanese, Japanese-English and Japanese, are available. They are easy to use and allow you to look up words while composing mails.

Rich network services

Dual network service (charged)

- A separate subscription is required.

Voice mail service (charged)

- A separate subscription is required.

Call forwarding service (free)

- A separate subscription is required.

Short message service (SMS) (free)

- No subscription is required.

i-mode functions

i-mode (charged)

This is an online service used by i-mode-compatible mobile phones. The i-mode services include site (program) connection, which gives users access to services provided on those sites by IPs (information providers); Internet connection, which provides users with access to Web pages; and i-mode mail, which allows users to exchange e-mail messages with Internet users.

- A separate subscription is required.

i-mode mail

You can call up the mail menu by just pressing [Menu] while the standby display is displayed. You can save up to 1,000 received messages and 400 sent messages on your FOMA terminal.

i-motion

You can download audio and video data into your FOMA terminal from i-motion supported sites to play and save it for later replay. The saved i-motion can be used as a ring tone.

i-motion mail

You can send movies recorded with the built-in camera and i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages as an i-mode mail attachment.

i-cuppli

You can use the FOMA terminal conveniently by downloading i-cuppli software from sites. For example, you can enjoy various games on your FOMA terminal by downloading game programs.

Mastering the FOMA N900iG

Visual communication with the FOMA N900iG

Global communication is just as easy abroad as in Japan. —p.101



Videophone lets you see the other party in real time while talking. —p.17

You can talk to the other party face-to-face while listening to his/her voice through the speaker. Switching the in-camera and out-camera enables the other party to see the scenery.



Instead of your self-portrait, you can display a substitute animated image and move its mouth and limbs.



During a voice call, you can take a picture such as a scenic shot and send it immediately. —p.167

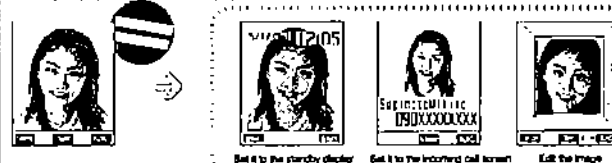


You can send a picture (still image) with your voice message. —p.258



Taking a picture (still image) or shooting movie. —p.246

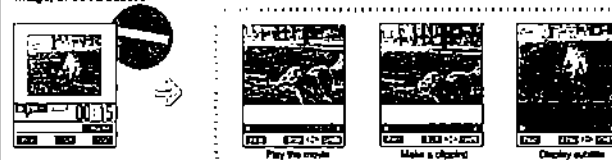
Take a picture (still image) in "Photo mode", "Mega pixel mode" and save it. You can attach it to mail, set it to the standby display or incoming call display, and edit it with a frame or character stamps.



Take continuous multiple pictures in "Continuous mode" and save them. You can view them like animation, select your favorite ones among these pictures and save them.



Shoot a movie in "Movie mode", "Chance capture" or "Long duration mode" and save it. With "Chance capture" mode, you can shoot it without missing the important scenes. With "Long duration mode", you can shoot it until the storage limit of miniSD memory card is reached. The shot movie can be attached to mail, clipped as a still image, or edit a subtitle.



Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read this "Safety Precautions" carefully prior to use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injury and damage to property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

 DANGER	 WARNING	 CAUTION
This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that serious bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use.

- The following symbols indicate specific directions:

	Indicates a prohibited action.
	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
	Indicates not to use the device near water, and not to get it wet.
	Indicates a compulsory action for the described direction.
	Indicates that the power cord should be unplugged from the power outlet.

- "Safety Precautions" are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (Including a Charger) (Common)	15
2. Handling the FOMA Terminal	17
3. Handling the Battery Pack	20
4. Handling the Adapters (Including a Charger)	22
5. Handling the FOMA Card	24
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment	25

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (Including a Charger) (Common)



Do

 **DANGER**

Use only the battery packs and adapters (including a Charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the FOMA terminal.

The use of devices other than those specified by DoCoMo may result in the battery pack and other parts leaking, overheating, exploding or catching fire.

Battery Pack NXX Desktop Holder NXX AC Adapter N03 DC Adapter NXX Data Communication Adapter N01

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo service counter.



Don't

 **WARNING**

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or suffer damage to internal circuitry.

Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where there is a risk of explosion or fire, such as gas stations.

Use of the FOMA terminal in dusty environments or in locations where there are flammable gases such as propane or gasoline may cause an explosion or fire.

Do not drop, throw or subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters to strong force or impacts.

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other electronic components may also be damaged or catch fire.

Safety Precautions (continued)

1. Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common) (continued)

CAUTION  Do If the FOMA terminal is used by children, the children's parent or guardian should teach them how to use the FOMA terminal and make sure that they always use the FOMA terminal correctly, as instructed. Improper usage could result in bodily injury.  Don't Do not keep the FOMA terminal in locations that are very humid or dusty or subject to high temperatures. Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause it to malfunction.  Don't Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal may become deformed or malfunction. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.	 Don't Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a sloping or unstable surface. The FOMA terminal may fall and cause an injury or be damaged.  Do Keep the FOMA terminal out of the reach of young children. A small child may swallow one of the components or suffer other bodily injury.
--	---

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal

WARNING  Don't Never use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle. Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle in a safe place before using the FOMA terminal. If you commit prohibited acts such as using the FOMA terminal while driving, such acts may be punishable under the law.  Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause a fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.  Do Turn off the FOMA terminal in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals. The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. Before turning the FOMA terminal off, ensure that the Auto power ON function is set to "OFF". Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facility regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. If you commit prohibited acts such as using the FOMA terminal in an aircraft, such acts may be punishable under the law.  Do If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls. Your heart may be adversely affected.  Don't Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance. The FOMA terminal may overheat, catch fire or cause a malfunction.  Don't Do not aim or direct the Infrared data port towards another person's eyes when using Infrared communication. Doing so may cause eye injury. Also, do not aim or direct the Infrared data port towards another Infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.	 Do Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic equipment or devices that use weak electronic signals. The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.  Do Take particular care with the following devices: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.  Don't If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket. The FOMA terminal is a folding mobile phone and uses magnets to detect that it is closed. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.  Do Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance with it when you talk in the handsfree mode with the speaker. It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.  Don't Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle. This will interfere with safe driving and could cause an accident.
---	--

Safety Precautions (continued)

2. Handling the FOMA Terminal (continued)

CAUTION

 In some types of vehicle, use of the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment. Do not use the FOMA if the terminal might impair safe driving.  Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts. The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.  Keep the FOMA terminal dry. Exposing the FOMA terminal to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, malfunction, electric shock or injury. Be careful where and how you use the FOMA terminal.  Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot. Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or fault.  Take care when loading or removing the miniSD memory card. Injury to hands or fingers could occur.  Do not pour liquid like water or insert a metal piece or any inflammable pieces into the FOMA card insertion slot of the FOMA terminal. Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or fault.  Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards and other magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal. The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.  If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location. There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering an electric shock.	 If in the event that the display or camera lens breaks, be careful of the broken glass. The surface of the display and camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However touching a broken display or camera lens may result in injury.  Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time. The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or failure.  Do not switch the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to your eyes. Take care also not to bring the light close to your eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit. This could cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect your eyes.  Do not use the light for other use than shooting with the built-in cameras. The light will be off after approximately 30 seconds of no operation. Using it for purposes outside of shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) will cause the light run out suddenly which may lead to an accident.  Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment. Metal is used in the following locations: Location used: Material Lens selection switch, the perimeter of the rear camera lens, Multi-function keys, Function key 1 & 2 and Neuropointer key : Chrome-plated, undercoat; Nickel-plated and copper-plated Part of front case (display area) : Magnesium alloy MD1D (JIS) or equivalent
--	--

3. Handling the Battery Pack

Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.

Label description	Battery type
Li-Ion	Lithium-Ion

DANGER

 Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.  Do not throw the battery pack into a fire. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.  Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.  If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.	 If battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment. Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.  Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.  Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the battery pack and do not solder it directly to the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.  Keep the battery pack dry. Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the battery pack.
--	--

Safety Precautions (continued)

3. Handling the Battery Pack (continued)

⚠ WARNING



If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging. Overcharging may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire. The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.



If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation, during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it again. Continued use of a faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day. The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.



If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water. Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

⚠ CAUTION



Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage. Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

4. Handling the Adapters (Including a Charger)

⚠ WARNING



Always use the specified power supply and voltage. Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Use in overseas countries may cause malfunction, etc. AC adapter: 100V AC (Plug it to 100V AC power outlet for home use in Japan only.) DC adapter: 12V DC and 24V DC (specific to vehicle with negative ground)



Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket in a vehicle. Take care also not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal. Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, bodily injury, or equipment malfunction.



The DC adapter is only for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Never use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles. Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



Never use the AC adapter or the desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom. Doing so may result in an electric shock.



Keep the adapters and the charger dry. Exposing the adapters and the charger to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the adapters and the charger.



Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug. Dust may cause a fire.



If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type. The use of incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period. Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the adapters or charger. Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Never use a damaged adapter's or charger's power cord or DC power cord. Doing so may cause an electric shock, overheating or fire.



Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.



Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands. Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.



When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket. Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

Safety Precautions (continued)

4. Handling the Adapters (Including a Charger) (continued)

 CAUTION  Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapter or charger. Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.	 Do not charge the wet battery pack. The battery pack may overheat, explode or catch fire.
 Do not place heavy objects on the AC or DC power cord for the adapter or charger. Doing so may cause an electric shock or fire.	 Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull on the cord itself. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

5. Handling the FOMA Card

 WARNING  Do not place the FOMA card in cookware for heating, e.g. a microwave oven, etc. or a high pressure vessel such as a pressure cooker. Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.	
 Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part). Your hands or fingers may be hurt.	 Do not drop the FOMA card or apply a shock on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 Use the FOMA card with equipment specified by DeCoMo. If you use a FOMA card with another equipment than specified, it may lead to the loss of data or equipment malfunction. For specified combinations of a FOMA card and equipment, contact a nearby DeCoMo service counter.	 Do not bend the FOMA card or apply weight on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.  Keep the FOMA card dry. Exposing the FOMA card to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.
 Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card. Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.	 Do not scratch the IC part. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 Do not use or leave the FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliances. Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.	 Do not keep the FOMA card in a dusty place. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 Do not incinerate or heat the FOMA card. Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.	 Do not keep the FOMA card in locations subject to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 Do not tamper or short-circuit the IC part carelessly. Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.	 Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children. A small child may swallow the FOMA card or suffer bodily injury.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.

 WARNING	
 If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at a distance of at least 22 cm. Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.	 Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities: - Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units). - Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards. - Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby. - Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly. - If your FOMA terminal has the Auto power ON function, disable this function before turning your FOMA terminal off.
 Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.	

 Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of radio waves on the equipment. Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

Handling and Care

General Notes

Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. Note that if the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that the LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Solded connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging performance, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud.

Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. Such actions may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by your warranty.

Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal at temperatures between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

The FOMA terminal may become warm while it is being used or charged. This is not abnormal and you can keep on using the FOMA terminal in that condition.

Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary (handline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such items before using the FOMA terminal.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored in your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA terminal.

Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Do not close the FOMA terminal while its strap is caught between the folding parts.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Always fit the earphone/microphone socket cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failure to fit these covers could result in problems caused by dust or water getting into the FOMA terminal.

Handling the Battery Pack

Battery packs have a limited service life.

- If a battery pack does not work despite fully charging, it has reached the period of replacing the battery pack. Replace it with a new battery pack with the same specifications.

Charge the battery pack in a location within the correct temperature range (5°C to 35°C). Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

The available operating time of the battery pack differs depending on the conditions in which you are using it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not dispose of used battery packs in the ordinary garbage.

- Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs, and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

Do not charge the battery pack in the following situations:

- Where the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C.
- In very humid or dusty locations or in locations exposed to strong vibrations.
- Close to appliances such as ordinary (handline) phones, TVs or radios.

While charging the FOMA terminal, the adapters (including the charger) may become warm. This is not abnormal and you can keep on using the FOMA terminal in that condition.

Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.

- Doing so may drain the car battery.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet's user manual.

Handling the FOMA Card

When removing the IC part, never apply force more than necessary.

When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.

During using, the FOMA card may become warm. This is normal, so you can continue using it.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC card reader or writer. It is the user's responsibility.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA card.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA card.

To preserve the environment, bring used FOMA cards to a DoCoMo service counter.

Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or switch the FOMA terminal off during miniSD memory card operation.

- Doing so may result in loss of data or FOMA terminal malfunction.

Handling the Camera

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

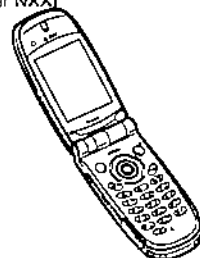
- Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

● Getting Started

Standard Package and Optional Accessories	000
Component Names and Functions	000
How to View the Display	000
How to View the Image Window (Rear Panel Display)	000
Menu Functions	000
How to Select Menu Items	000
International Roaming Service Networks	000
Setting the FOMA Card	000
FOMA Card Operational Restriction Function	000
FOMA Card Versions	000
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack	000
Charging Your Terminal	000
How to Check the Battery Level	000
Power On/Off	000
Setting the Date and Time	000
Notifying Your Phone Number to the Other Party	000
Checking Your Own Phone Number	000

Standard Package and Optional Accessories

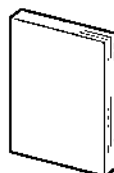
FOMA N900iG
(including warranty card, rear
cover NXX)



Battery Pack NXX
(including
manual)



Manual for FOMA N900iG
(this manual)

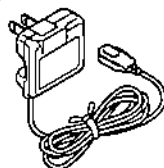


CD-ROM for FOMA N900iG

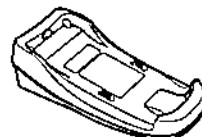


■ A Quick Manual is provided on p. XXX.

AC Adapter NXX
(including warranty card and
manual)



Desktop Holder NXX
(including
manual)



Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.

Earpiece speaker

- Allows you to hear the other party's voice

In-camera

- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send your video to the other party during a videophone call → p.67, and p.247

Display

- How to view the display → p.37

Home/

+Volume/ key

- Connects to the default easily → p.51
- Lights the display light for the image window when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
- Increases the earpiece volume during a call → p.78
- Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry → p.300
- Turns the light on when using a camera → p.254
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page

Memo/Check/

-Volume/ key

- Sets the "Manner mode" during an incoming call and activates the "Record message" → p.136
 - Plays recorded messages → p.245
 - Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded → p.77
 - Lowers the earpiece volume during a call → p.78
 - Takes pictures (still images) with the FOMA terminal folded → p.254
 - Scrolls the display to the next screens by page
- (The and keys together are called "Side keys" in this manual.)

External connector

- Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal → p.58, and p.383

Mouthpiece/Front mike

- Sends your voice
- Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice
- Used as the microphone when the camera is used in the Movie mode and "Picture voice"

Size (mm)*1	Width XX × Height XX × Depth XX
Mass (g)*2	Approx. XXXg

*1: Height and depth are for the FOMA when folded

*2: When the battery pack is attached

Light

- Turned on when using a camera → p.254

Incoming call/Charge lamp

- Flashes when a voice/ideophone call comes in or when mail or MMS Request Free is received. You can change the flash lamp color and synchronize the flash to a melody such as the ring tone (illumination) → p.185
- Red illumination lights up while charging.
- Flashes when taking a still picture or while shooting a movie
- Green illumination flashes if you power the FOMA terminal on with a miniSD memory card inserted or if you insert a miniSD memory card while charging the FOMA terminal while it is powered off

Rear panel

Out-camera

- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a videophone call → p.67, and p.246

Speaker

- Sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the handsfree mode are emitted from here

Image window

- Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations → p.35 and p.40
- Can be used as a finder when you take still pictures with your FOMA terminal folded p.300

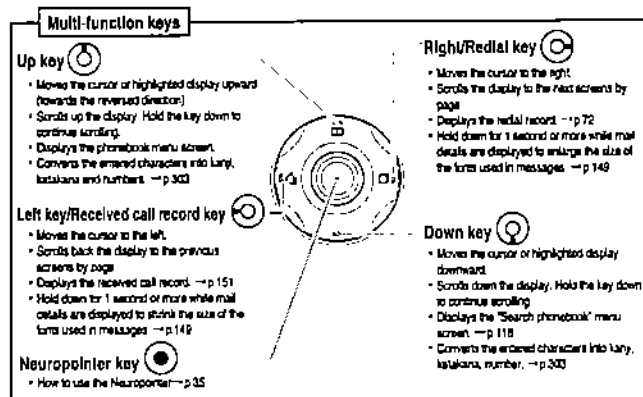
miniSD memory card slot

- Insert the miniSD memory card → p.383

Rear panel

Rear cover

Charging terminals



Function key 1

- Executes an operation displayed on the Soft key placed on the bottom left side of the display. → p.34

Multi-key (MULTI)

- Displays the task menu. → p.268

Send key

- Makes a voice call. → p.70
- Answers a voice call. → p.75
- Answers a videophone call with the substitute image. → p.92
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → p.302

***Driving mode key**

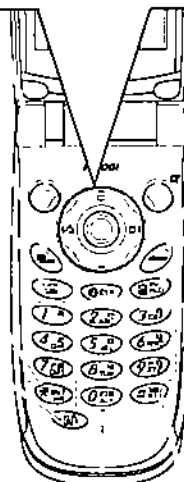
- Enters "X", "h" or other character string. → p.339
- Enters the pause (p). → p.146

Videophone key

- Makes a videophone call. → p.88
- Answers a videophone call. → p.92
- Switches the substitute image/camera view while making a videophone call. → p.92

Dial keys (0 to 9)

- Enters phone numbers. → p.70
- Enters characters and numbers. → p.303



Function key 2

- Executes an operation displayed on the Soft key placed on the bottom right side of the display. → p.34

Menu key (Menu)

- Displays the main menu. → p.44

Power/Hold/End of operation key

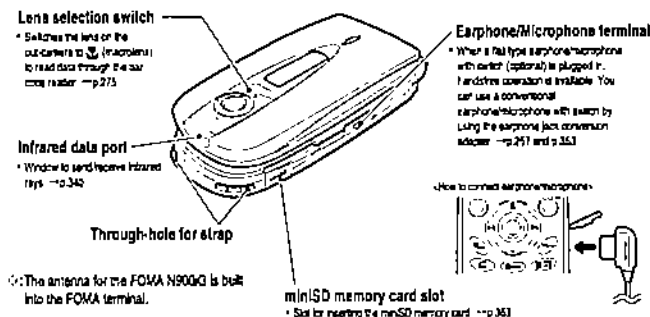
- Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. → p.62
- Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. → p.62
- Ends a call. → p.70
- Puts a call on hold. → p.81
- Exits the Mode screen main menu and Huppli menu.

Back (clear) key

- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. → p.71
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → p.71 and p.313
- Cancel pages being downloaded.
- Hold down for 1 second or more to cancel receiving message request, transmitting i-mode mail or sending i-mode mail.

Manner key (=15)

- Enters "X" or other symbols. → p.339
- Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". → p.136



Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

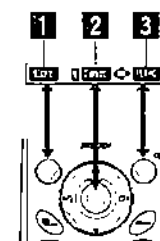
The functions which are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See Page	Key	Function	See Page
[Up]	Display light on/off	p.183	[Left]	Side key setting (while the main menu is displayed)	p.208
[Down]	Entering "X" (on the dialing screen with phone number enter screen)	p.303	[Right]	Driving mode setting (while the standby display is displayed)	p.82
[Left]	Manner mode setting (while the standby display is displayed, during a call or an incoming call)	p.134	[Left]	Espece volume adjustment (while the standby display is displayed or during a call)	p.78
[Down]	Multi task switch (while the multi task function is working)	p.266	[Memo/Check]	Voice memo recording (only during a call)	p.243
[Right]	Network switch screen display	p.300	[Left]	Check new message (while the standby display is displayed)	→ p.12 and p.15
[Left]	Standby display (during multi task)	p.266	[Left]	Huppli software list display (while the standby display is displayed)	→ p.88

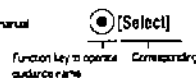
How to use the software keys

Guidance signs displayed at the bottom of the screen when the FOMA terminal is in standby or in operation are referred to as software keys. These software keys are related to operations and settings. To use a displayed software key, press the corresponding function key.

- To execute software key 1**
Press [1] to execute the software key displayed in 1. 1 includes [Mode], [Edit], [Finish], [Play], [Next], etc.
- To execute software key 2**
Press [2] to execute the software key displayed in 2. 2 includes [Select], [Store], [Set], [Play], [Change], etc.
- To execute software key 3**
Press [3] to execute the software key displayed in 3. 3 includes [FUNC], [Exit], etc. Press [3] while [FUNC] is displayed to display the function menu. → p.49



About the software key indication
The software keys are indicated as follows in this manual



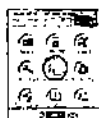
How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the screen, slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer (). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer enables you to quickly select an icon or item. When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

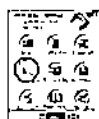
- The operating range of the pointer differs depending on a screen displayed.
- To select an item or icon, move the Neuropointer to the center and then press [Select]. The Neuropointer cannot be pressed except at the center.
- You can change the pointer settings such as pointer display on/off, focus or speed in "Neuropointer". → p.249

Selecting an icon or item with the Neuropointer

- 1 Press (Menu) to display the main menu while the standby display is displayed, and then display by sliding .



- 2 Slide to , so that it is shown as , and then press [Select].



The setting screen appears.



- The pointer disappears in the following cases:
 - When you select another item by pressing or other keys
 - When you display another screen
- The pointer disappears in the following cases. If you then slide Neuropointer, the pointer reappears at the position where it disappeared.
 - When you do not operate the Neuropointer for approx. 15 seconds
 - When you fold and reopen the FDMA terminal
- When you move the pointer to a place of no icon/item and press , the nearest icon/item to the pointer is selected, and then the pointer moves there automatically. However, the pointer does not move automatically in the following screens:
 - Screen memos
 - Site screens
 - Details screens for received maintenance mail
 - Details screens for Msg. request/res
- Moving the pointer and pressing will select no icon or item on the preview screen (title and image) of the "motion".
- The moving speed for the pointer differs depending on the operating display.
- The Neuropointer may be unusable on some screens including Flash image screens. In such a case, does not appear at the bottom of the screen.

Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

- 1 Slide to display , and then move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range.



The pointer changes to .
When the pointer is moved to the top
The pointer changes to

- 2 Press [Select].



The next page of the function menu appears.

- 3 Slide to the left to change to , and then press [Select].



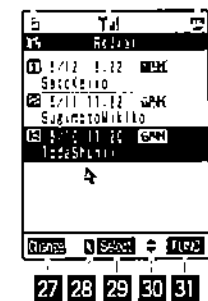
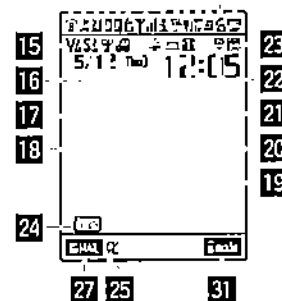
The previous page of the function menu appears.

How to View the Display

The marks (such as , , etc.) displayed on the display and image window are referred to as icons. The icons include the following:

Display

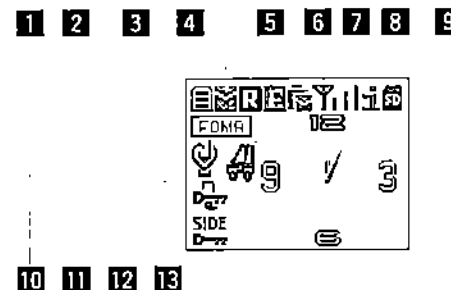
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 1 7 14



1. Displays the battery level → p.63
2. Displayed while All lock is activated → p.200
3. Displayed in the Secret mode or Secret only mode → p.201
4. Displayed while PIM lock is activated → p.204
5. Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated → p.205
6. Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time → p.201 and p.205
7. Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set at the same time → p.204 and p.205
8. You have unread mail → p.177
9. Inbox is full → p.178
10. SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.216
11. You have unread mail/ SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.216
12. Inbox is full/SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.178 and p.216
13. You have unread message request → p.100
14. Message request is full → p.104
15. You have unread message free → p.103
16. Message free is full → p.104
17. You have mail at the I-mode Center → p.180
18. Your mail storage at the I-mode Center is at the maximum capacity → p.180
19. Appears when you have mail stored at the I-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" → p.179
20. You have message request at the I-mode Center → p.105
21. Your message request at the I-mode Center is at the maximum capacity → p.105
22. You have message free at the I-mode Center → p.105
23. Your message free at the I-mode Center is at the maximum capacity → p.105
24. Radio reception level → p.62
25. Displayed when the FOOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach → p.62
26. Displayed in the Self mode → p.207
27. I-mode is in action → p.32
28. I-mode communication is in progress → p.32
29. Packet communication is in progress → p.414
30. Packet communication is in progress (sending) → p.414
31. Packet communication is in progress (receiving) → p.414
32. Packet communication is in progress (sending data) → p.414
33. Packet communication is in progress (receiving data) → p.414
34. Displaying pages compatible with SSL → p.48

35. Connecting USB cable → p.383
36. Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer (miniSD mode) → p.467
37. Ir exchange is in progress → p.341
38. Appears when you are using Ir remote control function → p.349
39. Appears when a miniSD memory card is loaded → p.363
40. Appears when a wrong miniSD memory card is loaded → p.363
41. Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer → p.467
42. Displays the status of a voice call → p.70
43. Displays the status of a videophone call → p.88
44. Displayed while restricting outgoing voice calls → p.304
45. Displayed while restricting packet communication → p.304
46. Displays the currently-accessed network
47. Displayed while multiple functions are activated → p.263
48. Displayed while a single function is activated → p.265
49. Display when Vibration is set → p.167
50. Displayed when Ring volume is set to Silent → p.79
51. Displayed in the Manner mode → p.135
52. Displayed when Remote monitor is set → p.102
53. Displayed in the Driving mode → p.82
54. Displayed when Alarm is set → p.209
55. Displayed when Record message is set → p.85
56. Displays the number of voice mail messages → p.274
57. Displayed when Display light is set to "OFF" → p.183
58. Displayed when Side keys guard is set to "ON" → p.208
59. Paused desktop icons → p.170
60. Ir-pple is running → p.73
61. Ir-pple standby display is being displayed → p.86
62. Appears when you are using Ir-pple DX → p.73
63. Appears when Ir-pple DX standby display is displayed → p.86
64. Pointer (Follow; blue) → p.249
65. Pointer (Hantokow; white) → p.249
66. Scrolls a page by pointer → p.36
67. Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1 → p.34
68. Displayed when the Neuropointer is available → p.35
69. Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key → p.34
70. Displayed when each key of the Multi-function keys is available
71. Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2 → p.34

Image Window



1. Currently accessing network → p.XXX
2. Battery level → p.XXX
3. You have unread mail → p.XXX
4. Inbox is full → p.XXX
5. SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.XXX
6. You have unread mail/SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.XXX
7. Inbox is full/SMS space in FOOMA card is full → p.XXX
8. You have unread Msg. request → p.XXX
9. Msg. Request space is full → p.XXX
10. You have unread Msg. Free → p.XXX
11. Msg. Free space is full → p.XXX
12. You have mail at the I-mode center → p.XXX
13. I-mode center mail space is full
14. You have Msg. Request at the I-mode center → p.XXX
15. I-mode center Msg. Request space is full → p.XXX
16. You have Msg. Free at the I-mode center → p.XXX
17. I-mode center Msg. Free space is full → p.XXX
18. Radio reception level → p.XXX
19. Out of network or radio unreachable status → p.XXX
20. In Self mode → p.XXX

21. In I-mode → p.XXX
22. I-mode communication in progress → p.XXX
23. Packet communication in progress → p.XXX
24. Packet communication in progress (Sending) → p.XXX
25. Packet communication in progress (Receiving) → p.XXX
26. Packet communication in progress (Sending data) → p.XXX
27. Packet communication in progress (Receiving data) → p.XXX
28. miniSD memory card loaded → p.XXX
29. Wrong miniSD memory card loaded → p.XXX
30. miniSD reader/writer running → p.XXX
31. miniSD reader/writer (miniSD mode) running → p.XXX
32. miniSD memory card on write-protect → p.XXX
33. In Manner mode → p.XXX
34. In Driving mode → p.XXX
35. Side keys guard is set to "ON" → p.XXX
36. Secret mode, Secret only mode, PIM lock and/or Keypad dial lock is set → p.XXX, p.XXX, p.XXX

FOOMA

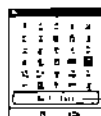
The display for this FOOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up where others may constantly light up depending on its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.

Checking the meaning of the displayed icons

You can check the meaning of each icon displayed on the screen. It is useful for checking the functions set to your FOMA terminal via icons displayed on the screen.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Icons".

2 Press to position the cursor over the icon you want to check the meaning of.



The description of the selected icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

The meaning of the selected icon appears.

How to View the Image Window (Rear Panel Display)

The Image window notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

● The displayed information differs depending on the "Image window" settings (p.187).

About the display

■ Clock display

Displays the clock during standby. You can select from the following five types of display or "OFF (not displayed)":



Analog 1



Analog 2



Digital 1



Digital 2



Local & Remote

■ During an incoming call display

Displays the phone number of an incoming call. When the caller's phone number is stored in your phonebook, information such as the caller's name appears. If no phone number is displayed, the reason for no number appears.



A voice call with the caller ID



A videophone call with the caller ID



A voice call from the caller stored in the Phonebook



A videophone call from the caller stored in the Phonebook



A voice call without the caller ID



A videophone call without the caller ID

■ During a call display

Displays the type of call during a call. Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



During a voice call



During a videophone call



During remote monitor

■ During an outgoing call display

Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



■ Alarm notification

For alarm notification of "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo", an alarm notification animation corresponding to the function appears.



"Alarm clock"



"Schedule"



"ToDo"

■ Receiving a new mail

When "Mail" is set to "ON", after "Received message" is displayed, the sender and title are displayed.



■ During packet communication

Displayed while the FOMA terminal is open.



During packet communication

Checking the caller or sender

When the Indicator display shows "Missed call" or "New message", you can check the caller/sender's name and the title of the mail. Press **[Home]** with the FOMA terminal folded to display the contents of missed call record or new mails. If you press **[Home]** again, you can check up to three missed calls or new mails. If you press **[Home]** again after checking all items, the clock display reappears. If you have both missed calls and new mails, first the missed calls appear and then new mails appear.

- When you display the "Missed calls" record or delete the "Missed call" desktop icon, the missed call display in the Image window disappears.
- When using the tool group function (p.42), you cannot check missed calls with the Image window.

■ Missed call display



If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "Missed call" desktop icon on the display.



If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "Missed calls" record on the display.



After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

■ New mail display



If you open the FOMA terminal, you can find the "New mail" desktop icon on the display.



When the "Mail" is set to "On", the sender, sent date and title are displayed.

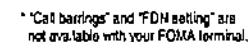


After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

- Press **[Home]** with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In the power save mode, the Image window shows nothing. Press **[Home]** to display the view of the Image window again.

Menu Functions

To set or check various functions with the FOMA terminal, you can call up each function from the main menu. The structure of the menu is as the following:

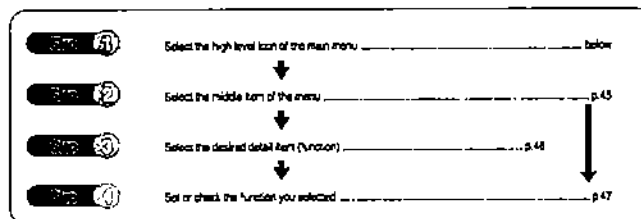


How to Select Menu Items

In the standby display, press **[Menu]** to display the main menu. Select a high level icon from the main menu to display the middle item menu. From the middle item menu, select the desired detail item to display a setting screen or message for checking. Set a function or check the setting according to the menu.

- To select the menu or item quickly, press the dial key with the same number as the desired item «Direct key selection». This manual uses the following way to explain item selection: "Press **[1]** to highlight the item and then press **[Select]**."
- Pressing **[Menu]** + the menu number also calls up a setting screen quickly. For details, see "Menu Function List" (p.354).
- After finishing the function settings, the detail item selection screen appears. Pressing **[Exit]** terminates the menu option and the screen returns to the standby. Other activated menu functions are displayed during the multi task.
- To cancel the menu operation, press **[Exit]**. The setting operation is canceled and the standby display of the previous screen reappears. Depending on the menu, a message asking whether to void the setting being made or not may appear. In that case, press **[Exit]** to clear the message.

- To operate the menu function, follow the steps below:

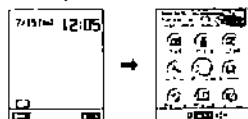


<Example: Setting the flashing color of the "Illumination in talk" function>



Select the high level icon of the main menu

- 1 Press **[Menu]**.



The main menu containing nine high level icons appears.
The selected high level icon is embossed in different color.

- 2 Press **[1]** to select a high level icon.

After selecting a high level icon, the guidance for the selected icon appears.
When scrolling the guidance continuously
Press and hold down **[1]**
When no key is pressed for 15 seconds or more
The main menu closes and the previous screen reappears.
When using the Neuropointer
How to use the Neuropointer — p.35



Guidance for the high level icon

- 3 Select **[Settings]**, and then press **[Select]**.



The middle item list screen appears.

- You can set the main menu so as not to display guidance in "Menu display set". —p.241



Select the middle item of the menu

- 1 Press **[1]** to select the middle item of the menu.

The selected middle item is highlighted.
To scroll items continuously
Press and hold down **[1]**

- 2 Select "Talk", and then press **[Select]**.



The detail item selection screen (detail screen) of "Talk" menu appears.



Select the desired detail item (function)

- 1 Press **[1]** to select the desired detail item (function).

The details screen of the selected detail item (function) appears. You can check the setting status or menu number of the selected function in the details screen of the detail item.
To scroll items continuously
Press and hold down **[1]**
To change the details screen to the list screen
Menu display set —p.241

2 Select "Illumination In talk", and then press [Select].



Illumination in talk setting screen appears

Entering the security code

Depending on the functions, the security code entry screen may appear before the details screen of the selected function is displayed. To display the details screen, enter the security code. —p.192

1 Enter the 4- to 8-digit security code, and then press [Set].



Entered numbers are displayed by "...".
When the correct security code is entered, the details screen of the function appears.
When incorrect security code is entered
A message notifying you that wrong numbers have been entered appears.
Enter the correct security code again.



Set or check the function you selected

To set the selected function, there are various ways: selecting an item from the list display, selecting "YES/NO" (p.48), entering numbers (p.48) or marking a checkbox (p.48).

- Depending on the functions, you may have to select a more detail item.
- You cannot select some functions due to settings or other setting conditions.

1 Press to select the item you want to set.

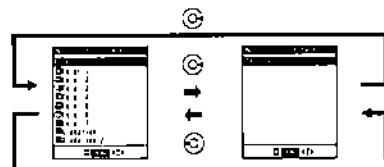
The selected item is highlighted.

To scroll items continuously

Press and hold down .

When items appear in multiple pages

"Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the screen. Press  while the top item is selected to display the previous page. Press  while the bottom item is selected to display the next page. To scroll the display by page, press  (or ) for the previous page, press  (or ) for the next page.



2 Press [Select].

The selected item is set.

3 After operation, press .

The menu operation completes and the standby display reappears (except when multiple tasks are running).

■ Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

Some functions may prompt you to select "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF" on the screen.

1 Press to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF"), and then press [Select].



The selected item is set.

■ Entering numbers

Some functions may prompt you to enter numbers on the screen.

1 Enter numbers by pressing to , and then press [Set].



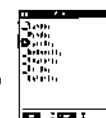
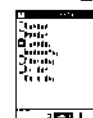
The entered numbers are set.
Entered numbers may be set automatically by just entering all the required digits. In this case, you don't have to press  [Set].
To enter a 1-digit number in a 2-digit number entry screen
First press , and then enter the desired number.
Enter a 3-digit number in the same manner.

■ Marking a checkbox

Some functions may prompt you mark a checkbox on the screen. Such a screen mainly appears when selecting multiple items.

1 Press to select ☐ (checkbox) to mark.

2 Press [Select].



The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☒. This is the status of a selected checkbox.
Press  [Select] to toggle ☐ and ☒.
When "Finish" appears as a soft key, pressing  [Finish] selects the item selected.

Function menu

When operating a function in which you can perform storing, editing or deleting, "Function menu" appears as a software key. Press [FUNC] to display the function menu. Press to highlight the item which you desire from the function menu, and then press to select the item.



- When an item appears in multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu. Press while the top item of the function menu is selected to display the previous page. Press while the bottom item is selected to display the next page. To scroll the display by page, press (or [Home]) for the previous page, press (or [Memo/Check]) for the next page.
- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation.
- You may not select some functions due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable functions are grayed out.

Instructions for menu operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are described as follows.

■ The notation for selecting function

Example: How to select "Keypad sound" from "Settings".

The notation for this manual:

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Other settings" ► "Keypad sound".

The high level item The middle level item The detailed level item (function)

The actual operations:

- 1 Press (Menu) while the standby display is displayed.
- 2 Press on the main menu to select , and then press [Select].
- 3 Press on the middle item selection screen to select "Other settings", and then press [Select].
- 4 Press on the detailed item selection screen to select "Keypad sound", and then press [Select].

■ The notation for setting function

Example: How to set "Restrictions" for your phonebook.

The notation for this manual:

3 Select the phonebook entry you want to check for the phone number.



The phone number of the selected entry appears.
To cancel the Restrictions setting
Select the phone number you want to cancel.

The actual operations:

- 1 Press on the list screen of the phonebook to select the phone number you want to check.
- 2 Press [Select].

■ The notation for selecting menus continuously

Example: How to add to phonebook

The notation for this manual:

2 Select "Add to phonebook" - "Phone".



To store the phone number in the FOMA card
Select "USIM".

The actual operations:

- 1 Press to select "Add to phonebook" and press [Select].
- 2 Press to select "Phone" and press [Select].

International Roaming Service Networks

International roaming is the ability to make/receive calls and access i-mode services using a local operator's network when you are in another country.

International roaming service enabled with N900IG

- The international roaming service is available in XX* countries and regions worldwide.
- You can use the mobile phone number that you have in Japan even when you are abroad.
- You can enjoy i-mode mail, i-mode and SMS when you are out of Japan. The international roaming service also allows packet communication while connected to a PC.
- Some of the helpful network services such as the Voice mail service, the Call forwarding service, and Roaming guidance are available even when you are abroad.

*X: 1: As of XX, 2004

Home/overseas networks available for N900IG

- The FOMA terminal accesses a network by switching between the home network and the overseas networks automatically.



- To get the international roaming service, you need to sign up for it in advance.
- The communication services and functions that can be used depend on each network you roam on. → p.000
- For operations and functions to use the FOMA terminal abroad, see p.000.
- For more information on communication services and network coverage, refer to [XXXXX] or visit the WORLD WING website (<http://www.00000000>).

Switching networks

The FOMA terminal searches and accesses a network automatically. No setting changes are required when going abroad or coming back to Japan.

- **When going abroad from Japan**
The FOMA terminal automatically detects and accesses the accessible network.
- **When moving around overseas**
When you move out of an overseas network that you have been on, the FOMA terminal performs network detection again and accesses another available network.
- **When coming back to Japan**
The FOMA terminal accesses the FOMA network automatically.

- Refer to the separate volume [XXXXX] for the FOMA terminal behavior when you switch networks while a call or mail comes in.
- Note that while the FOMA terminal is switching networks, key operations may not work and some of the functions may not be usable.
- Network switchover may not be performed due to low battery power.

Setting the FOMA Card

The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number. By inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, you can carry out communications including a voice/videophone call, i-mode, mail exchange and packet data communication. In addition, you can use multiple FOMA terminals according to applications by switching your FOMA card.

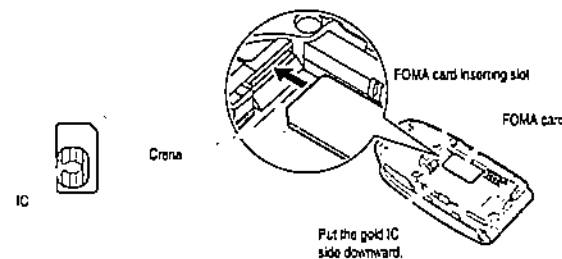
- The FOMA terminal comes with a FOMA card only if you are a new subscriber.
- You can also save data such as phonebook entries and SMS messages in the FOMA card. → p.194
- You can set "PIN1" and "PIN2" codes for the FOMA card. → p.194
- For detailed handling, refer to the manual for the FOMA card.
- You can use the FOMA terminal with an SIM/USIM card that is not a FOMA card. → p.XXX

Inserting/Removing the FOMA card

Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, first turn the power off and remove the battery pack. When inserting or removing the FOMA card, be careful not to touch or scratch the IC accidentally.

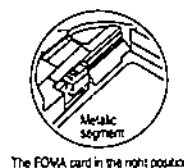
Inserting

- Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown below.



- Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed.

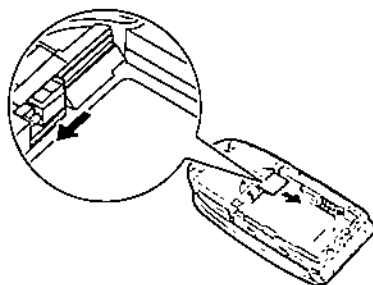
Check that the metallic segment on the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown below.



Removing

1 Slide the lock holding the FOMA card.

Be careful not to touch the FOMA card with your fingers.



2 The FOMA card is ejected a little. Pull it out straight carefully.

Be careful not to drop the FOMA card when removing it.



- Note that if the FOMA card is inserted forcibly, it may be damaged.
- Be careful not to lose the removed FOMA card.
- Do not remove the FOMA card forcibly. It may be deformed or damaged.
- If the FOMA card is difficult to remove, push it until it is fixed and then slide the lock again.

PIN codes for the FOMA card

<PIN1/PIN2 codes>

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card.

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties. By entering the PIN1 code, you can make/receive calls and operate various communication functions.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code you enter to use "FDN setting".

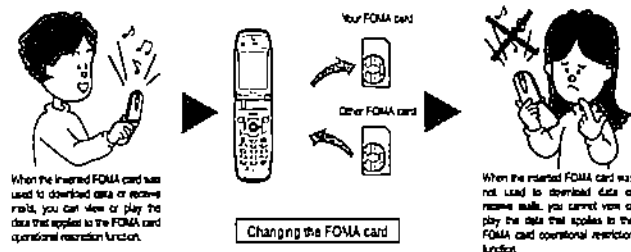
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is "0000".
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. →p.195
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card, use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

FOMA Card Operational Restriction Function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from sites or Web pages or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible for viewing, playing, editing and attaching to mail and transmitting data via the Infrared communication function only when the FOMA card used for downloading such data or file is inserted.

If you replace the FOMA card with another one, the "i" mark is attached with data and files with this function set and the operation above-mentioned does not work.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - i-rppp, melody, image, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary downloaded from sites or Web pages
 - i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages
 - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary
 - File (melody/image/movie or i-motion) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
 - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
 - Msg. RequestFree with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
 - Image inserted in the message body of a Deco mail
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card is inserted.
- Data received via the Infrared communication function, data transmission (OBEX) function or a miniSD memory card and the operation above, does not work and pictures (still images)/continuous multiple pictures/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by this function.



- When data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", if you remove your FOMA card or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings. For example, even if "Melody A" that applies to the FOMA card operational restriction function is specified as a ring tone, the default ring tone sounds when you receive a call. When you reinsert your FOMA card, the FOMA terminal sounds "Melody A" for an incoming call.
- Pre-installed i-rppp can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set to your terminal, you cannot activate i-rppp or download i-motion from the mail detail screen of i-mode mail.
- If you replace the FOMA card to another one, in "Image" or "i-Motion", images or movies with which the FOMA card operational restriction function is set are displayed as the image on the right.



FOMA Card Versions

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card. Please note that there are the following functional differences from "FOMA card (green)" when you use "FOMA card (blue)" on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)	See page
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card's phonebook	20 digits	26 digits (including "+")	p.106
International roaming service	Not available	Available	p.XX
WORLD WING	Not available	Available	below

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas countries with the same mobile phone number as you use in Japan by inserting your "FOMA card (green)" in a FOMA terminal that supports the international roaming service or an overseas mobile phone (GSM method) for the service. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Contact the following for more information:

Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-005-250 (toll free) (In English)

• You can call this number from any type of phone, including DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
• Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

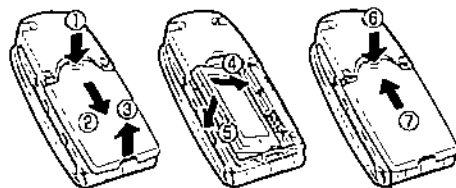
151 (no area code) (toll free) (In Japanese only)

• You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before replacing the battery pack.
- When the FOMA card is inserted, make sure that the FOMA card is correctly set before attaching the battery pack (p.51). If the FOMA card is not properly set, the battery pack cannot be attached. If the battery pack is attached forcibly, the FOMA card may be damaged.
- For details, refer to the manual for the Battery Pack NXX.

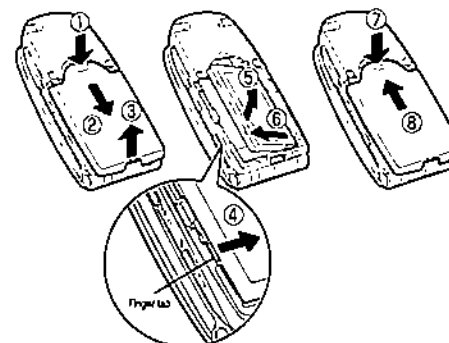
■ Attaching



Make sure the rear cover and the FOMA terminal (body) is securely bound.

- 1 While pressing down the knob of the rear cover in the ① direction, slide the cover in the ② direction and then pull up in the ③ direction to remove it.
- 2 With the caution label on the battery pack facing upwards, insert it into the notches of the FOMA terminal (body) in the ④ direction and press the battery pack down in the ⑤ direction to clip it into the FOMA terminal. Check that the tabs on the battery pack are slotted into the notches of the FOMA terminal.
- 3 Place the rear cover into the cavity in the FOMA terminal (body), keeping the rear cover open in about 3 mm. Then push the rear cover in the direction of arrow ⑥ to clip it into the FOMA body, and slide it in the direction of arrow ⑦ until you hear a click.

■ Removing



- 1 While pressing down the knobs of the rear cover in the ① direction, slide the cover in the ② direction and then pull up in the ③ direction to remove it.
- 2 While pressing down in the ④ direction, lift the tabs of the battery pack up in the ⑤ direction, and then remove it in the ⑥ direction.
- 3 Place the rear cover into the cavity in the FOMA terminal (body), keeping the rear cover open in about 3 mm. Then push the rear cover in the direction of arrow ⑦ to clip it into the FOMA body, and slide it in the direction of arrow ⑧ until you hear a click.

Charging Your Terminal

Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack NXX for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, bring used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, or the recycle shop, etc.

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC Adapter NXX and DC Adapter NXX (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the "Display light" (p.183) for "Charging" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal switched on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

Battery usage time

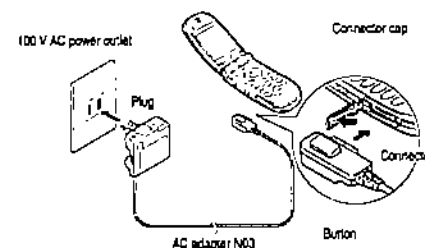
(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

Network	Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
FOMA	Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Videophone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours
3G	Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Videophone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours
QPRS	Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Videophone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours
GSM	Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Videophone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-mode and i-mode standby display will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still, while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or the light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

Charging the battery pack with the AC adapter (optional)

Connect the AC Adapter NXX to the FOMA terminal to charge the battery pack.



- Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.
 - Plug the AC adapter connector into the FOMA terminal's external connector in the direction as shown above.
 - Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned on

Charging starts. The charge lamp lights in red and "E" flashes. The charge lamp turns off and "E" lights when charging ends.

Standard charging time
Approx. 300 min.
- When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the AC adapter from the power outlet.
 - Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

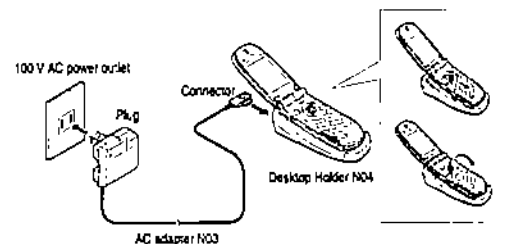
NOTE

- Be sure to put Battery Pack NXX into the FOMA terminal before you start charging the battery.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.
- If the battery is dead or the power is off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has actually started.
- The AC adapter, FOMA terminal and battery pack may become warm during the battery charge, it is not abnormal.

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder

Use the AC Adapter NXX and the Desktop Holder NXX to charge the battery pack. As you can charge the battery pack by simply placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder without opening its connector cap, it is convenient.

- You can charge the Battery Pack NXX by attaching the FOMA terminal on the desktop holder.
- The desktop holder has a screw hole for fixation on the bottom.

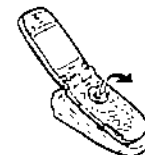


- 1 Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above.
- 2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet.
- 3 Place the FOMA terminal firmly in the desktop holder as shown above.

Charging status. The charge lamp lights in red and "E" flashes. The charge lamp turns off and "E" lights when charging ends.

When the FOMA terminal is turned off	Standard charging time Approx. 300 min.
--------------------------------------	--

- 4 After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal and lift it up in the arrow direction from the holder.

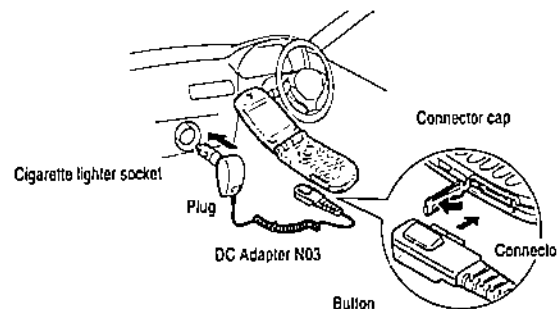


- Be sure to put Battery Pack NXX into the FOMA terminal before you start charging the battery.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.
- If the battery is dead or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has actually started.
- The AC adapter, desktop holder, FOMA terminal and battery pack may become warm during the battery charge, which is not abnormal.

Charging the battery pack with the DC adapter (optional)

Connect the DC Adapter N03 (optional) with the FOMA terminal to charge the battery pack. The DC adapter supplies the power for charging from the cigarette lighter socket (12V/24V DC) in a car.

- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.



- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.
- 2 Plug the DC adapter connector into the FOMA terminal's external connector in the direction as shown above.

3 Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car.



Charging starts. The charge lamp lights in red and "100%" flashes. The charge lamp turns off and "100%" lights when charging ends.

Standard charging time
Approx. 1000 min

When the FOMA terminal is turned off.

4 When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car.

5 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

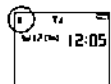
- Depending on your car type, the DC adapter may not be connected.
- When the vehicle engine is not running, use of the DC adapter may drain the car battery. Always start the engine before using the DC adapter. Always disconnect the DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal and unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket when you are not using the DC adapter or when you are not in the car.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.
- Please put Battery Pack NXX into the FOMA terminal before you start charging the battery.
- The standard battery charge time is for the FOMA terminal turned off. You can charge the battery with the power ON, but it takes longer to charge the battery than it does with the power off.
- If the battery is dead or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has started.
- The DC adapter, FOMA terminal and battery pack may become warm during the battery charge. However, it is not abnormal.

How to Check the Battery Level

You can check the remaining battery level in the following two ways. The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed. Check the current battery level with the displayed icon.



(green): Full charge

(green): Low charge

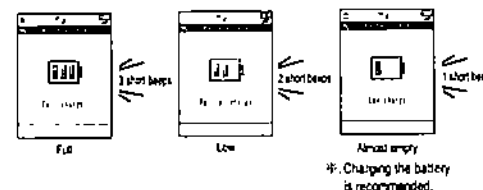
(red): Almost empty. Charging the battery is recommended. → p.55

Checking the battery level with sound and graphics (animation)

The current battery level is indicated by sound and graphics (animation).

1 Select (Menu) ► (Settings) ► "Other settings" ► "Battery level".

The battery level check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level graphics disappears in about three seconds.



※ Charging the battery is recommended.

- The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or when being in the Manner mode.

When the battery runs out <Low-voltage alarm>

When the battery runs out, the screen as shown on the right flashes and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any keys other than (Home) or (Memo/Check).



- If the battery runs out during a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and short tones "pip-pip-pip" sounds. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.
- When "Ring volume" for "Phone/Video-phone" is set to "Silent", the low-voltage alarm sounds at a constant volume.
- During the "Manner mode", when the manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Silent" for "Phone vol.", "OFF" for "LVA tone" in "Original", no low-voltage alarm sounds.

Switching the Screen Display to English

Default setting Japanese

You can switch the function name and messages showed between English and Japanese in the display or image window.

- When "Japanese" is set, "Language" appears as the function name, and if "English" is set, "Select language" appears.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ディスプレイ" ► "Language (Select language)".

To switch the display from Japanese to English
Select "English".

To switch the display from English to Japanese
Select "日本語".

- If the FOMA cards are replaced, the "Language (Select language)" setting may be changed depending on the current card setting.

Power On/Off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery. Use the specified AC adapter or DC adapter (optional) for charging.
- No date and time is set by default. Set them in "Set local time". → p.65

Turning the power on

1 Hold down for 1 second or more.



The date/time and the battery level appear (the standby display).

When "E1" appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.
Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as "E1" lights.
Even if the reception level is strong with "E1" icon displayed and you are not moving,
a call may be disconnected.

When you try to use the phonebook, mail or other function immediately after the power on

A message notifying you that the FOMA terminal cannot start up such a function because it is presently loading FOMA card data may appear. In this case, retry the operation after a while.

When changing an image displayed on the standby display to another image or calendar
"Display setting" → p.177

When the PIN1 code entry is set to "ON"

The Enter PIN1 code screen is displayed. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the standby display.
→ p.197

When "I-cuppl stand-by display" is set

A message asking whether to start up "I-cuppl stand-by display" (p.86) appears.

Turning the power off

1 Hold down for 2 seconds or more.



The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

When turning the power off during I-mode

"E1" flashes and it may take a little longer before the FOMA terminal turns off.

Entering the PIN1 code

When "PIN1 code entry set" (p.194) of "PIN setting" is set to "ON", enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code after the power is turned on. The default setting is "OFF".

1 Enter your current PIN1 code.

The PIN1 code entered is displayed by "E1".

2 Press [Set].

When the correct PIN1 code is entered, first the "FOMA" logo appears and then the standby display appears.

If the PIN1 code is locked after three incorrect entries

Cancel the PIN lock → p.196

Set local time/Set remote time

Setting the Date and Time

Setting date and time of the FOMA terminal

<Set local time>

No date or time is set by default. After setting the date and time in "Set local time", the date and time you set appears on displays such as the standby display and image window. In addition, you can use various functions such as the schedule function.

- Since the date and time set under this function are used as the standard for setting the remote time, be sure to set the Japanese date and time.
- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2003 and 23:59 on December 31, 2099. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2099.
- If you set up the clock, the date and time will be displayed in functions such as Standby display, Redial record/Received calls record and Mail.
- If you set up the clock, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as "Alarm clock" and "Schedule".

<Example: Setting May 12, 2005, 12:05>

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Clock" ► "Set local time".

2 Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).



Press to move the highlighted display, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.
Press .

Setting the global clock

<Set remote time>

Default setting | Time zone: GMT + 00 : 00 | City name: London | Summer time: OFF

In addition to the Japanese Standard Time set in "Set local time", you can display the time of another city in the world on your standby display. This is a convenient feature when travelling abroad. Summer time setting is also available.

- Set an accurate date and time in "Set local time" (p.65) before setting the Remote time.
- To display the Remote time on the standby display, make the setting under "Clock display" (p.192).
- If you set Summer time, the Remote time is displayed in the time an hour earlier than the set time.

1 Select (Menu) > > "Clock" > "Set remote time".

2 Select "Time zone".

To set Summer time
Select "Summer time" and then "OFF".

3 Select a city you want to set for the remote time.

To change the city name
Press (Change) and then select a city name.

Notifying Your Phone Number to the Other Party

If the other party's phone is a digital terminal capable of displaying the caller ID, you can display your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or videophone call. Since the caller ID is your important information, please handle with care when you send your caller ID. You can use the following ways to set whether you notify your caller ID to the other party or not.

Function name	Description	See page
Notify caller ID	Set whether to notify your caller ID at one time for all the calls you make.	p.283
"186" / "184" dial	Set whether to notify your caller ID for each call you make by dialing "186" or "184".	p.67
Notify caller ID	Set whether to notify your caller ID from the function menu for each call you make.	p.124

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card.

1 Press (Menu) > .



You can also display your own number by selecting Menu key > "Own data" > "Own number", → p.42

- Your data (name, home phonenumber, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. → p.237
- When an i-mode mail address is stored as your own data, press to check the stored data.
- An i-mode mail address can be checked by selecting "Menu" - "Options" - "Mail settings" - "Confirm Mail Address" from the i-mode menu.

● Making/Receiving a Call

■ How to Make a Call

Making a Call	000
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number	000
Notifying/Not Notifying Your Phone Number When Making a Call	000
Sending Push Signals Quickly	000
Attaching a Number Before the Phone Number	000
Making International Calls	000
Settings for Easy International Calls	000
Setting a Subaddress to Make a Call	000
Automatically Connecting a Dropped Line	000
Reducing Ambient Noise to Make Your Phone Conversation Clearer	000
Using a Terminal without Using Your Hands <Optional>	000

■ How to Receive a Call

Receiving a Call	000
Setting to Stop the Ring Tone Quickly	000
Ending/Holding a Call by Folding the FOMA Terminal	000
Using Dialed or Received Calls Records	000
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	000
Adjusting the Ring Volume	000

■ When You Cannot/Couldnot Answer Immediately

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately	000
Setting an On Hold Tone	000
When You are Driving and Cannot Take Calls	000
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail	000
Having the Caller Leave a Message	000
Recording the Caller's Message during an Incoming Call	000
Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos	000

Making a Call

Dialing a phone number to make a voice call.

- Make sure that the battery level is adequate and the radio wave reception level is sufficiently strong.
- You cannot make calls with the FOMA terminal to some phones including interoffice units as they cannot be reached by dialing with the area code.

1 Dial the other party's phone number, starting with the area code.



Even if you are within the same area code as the number you are dialing, you must enter the full number, including the area code.

Area code - City code - Subscriber number

To call a mobile phone

090-XXXX-XXXX

or

060-XXXX-XXXX

To call a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX

2 Press [CALL].

"CALL" lights.

The phone number immediately disappears from the display and reappears from the right side of the screen, and then a call is made.

You can also make a call by pressing [DIAL].

If you hear a busy tone

The other party is engaged on the phone. Press [END] and call again later.

If you hear an announcement saying that the call did not go through

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not turned on or is in a location of no radio reception.

Press [END] and try again later.

If you hear an announcement requesting your phone number

The other party's Caller ID request service is set to "Activate". Set your FOMA terminal to notify your phone number and call again. → p.56

3 When you finish the conversation, press [END].

- You can still make a call even during i-mode or while you are sending or receiving mail.
- If you switch to a screen other than the talking screen during a call, press [END] to return to the talking screen.
- You can still make a call even if you switch the order of steps 1 and 2. If you have entered the wrong phone number, press [END] to erase the display, and then dial again.
- Press [HOLD] while making a call or talking switches to the handsfree mode. When the handsfree mode is set, you can talk while listening to the other party's voice from the speaker. However, since the other party's voice will play over the loudspeaker during the handsfree mode, always move to a location where this will not bother others before switching to the handsfree mode.
- Pressing [HOLD] again to cancel the handsfree mode.
- You can send a still image photographed with the built-in camera during a call to the other party (Speed photo mail). → p.167
- When the communication line is busy, "Please wait" may be displayed. In this case, call again later.

If you make a mistake when entering a phone number

■ To insert a number

Press [LEFT] to move the cursor to the number on the right side of where you want to insert a number, and then press the number.

■ To delete a number

Press [RIGHT] to move the cursor to the number you want to delete, and then press [DEL]. If you hold down [DEL] for 1 second or more, all numbers on the right of the cursor will be deleted with the cursor position included.

■ To correct the entire number

Position the cursor at the beginning or end of the number and hold down [DEL] for 1 second or more. The standby display will return.

Putting the current call on Hold

<Holding>

You can put the current call on hold.

1 Press [HOLD] during a call.



The caller hears a hold tone.

To end a call while the call is on hold

Press [END].

If the caller hangs up while the call is on hold

The call ends.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press [HOLD], [CALL], or [Answer].



- You can set a hold tone when the other party hears during a call in the "Select hold tone". → p.158
- The FOMA terminal mutes the sounds while a call is on hold under conditions as follows. "Phone/V-Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent". The phone is in "Manner mode" and the manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original" in which "Phone vol." is set to "Silent".
- If the "Fold setting" (p.160) is set to except "End the call", you can put a call on hold with the FOMA terminal folded.

Redial

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

You can redial previously dialed numbers in a voice/video phone call. This is useful for redialing someone whose phone was busy last time you called.

- The FOMA stores up to 30 numbers of voice/video phone call.
- If you call the same number in the same Phonebook more than once, that number is treated as one record and the most recent call is stored.
- Once the number of records exceeds 30, each new record overwrites the oldest record.
- Calls made by calling up the Phonebooks stored as secret data are not saved as Redial records.

- Press and select the number you want to redial.
The detail screen of the selected redial is displayed. The "current redial number/total number of redials" are displayed on the upper right side of the screen. The smaller the number is, the more recent the call was made. To display the redial before and after the current one Every time you press on the detail screen of the redial, the redial before the current one is displayed like the 2nd redial, 3rd redial.... Every time you press the redial after the current one is displayed like 30th redial, 29th redial.... For the telephone number registered in the phonebook if a name has been registered, it is also displayed.
- Press or [Dial].
To make a videophone call Press .
- When you finish the conversation, press .

- While "PM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored even in the case of calls to parties whose names or icons are stored in the Phonebook.
- Phone numbers you have dialed are also stored in the "Dialed calls" (p.151). In the "Dialed calls", information on each call is recorded as a separate record even when you redialed the same phone number.
- No dialed date and time is displayed when the date and time is not set in "Set local time".
- With redial, you can store recorded phone numbers in the phonebook or compose and send i-mode mails from the function menu in the same manner with dialed record/received call record. → p.151

Deleting a redial record

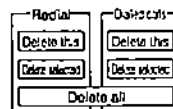
Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial records. To prevent other people from viewing your Redial records, you must delete them.

- Display the Redial record you want to delete.
- Select "Delete this" from the function menu.



- To delete selected Redial records Select "Delete selected" from the function menu, and then select the records you want to delete.
- To delete all Redial records Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

- If you perform "Delete all", both "Redial" and "Dialed calls" are deleted. Note that if you perform "Delete this" or "Delete selected" on the Redial, the Dialed calls record is not deleted. About dialed record → p.151



Notifying/Not Notifying Your Phone Number When Making a Call

Every time you make a call, you can prefix "186" to the other party's phone number when you send your caller ID, or "184" when you send no caller ID.

- Prefixing "186"/"184" is not available when making international calls. Instead, prefix "X31x"/"X31x" or use "発信号設定" (p.XXX).

Notifying your caller ID

Voice call : 186 - The other party's phone number -

Videophone call : 186 - The other party's phone number -

Notifying no caller ID

Voice call : 184 - The other party's phone number -

Videophone call : 184 - The other party's phone number -

- You can also use "X31x" instead of "186" and "X31x" instead of "184".
- When you hear the guidance asking you to send your caller ID, make a call again with the prefix of "186" or "X31x".

Pause dial

Sending Push Signals Quickly

You can send a message to the QUICKCAST™, make a ticket reservation or check your bank account balance by sending push signals from your FOMA terminal.

Storing dial data using the pause dial function

Store dial data to be sent as push signals in the pause dial in advance. Inserting a pause (p) allows you to send dial data with a pause where you pressed the pause key.

- You can store only one set of dial data, each can contain up to 128 characters.
- You can enter the following characters for dial data : 0 to 9, *, # and a pause (p).
- You cannot insert a pause (p) at the beginning of dial data or successively.
- If you insert a pause (p) at the end of dial data, the pause will automatically be deleted when storing the dial data.

- Select (Menu) ► ► "Other settings" ► "Pause dial".

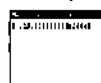
When dial data is already stored
The stored dial data is displayed.

- Press [Edit] and enter the dial data.

Press to , , and , and then enter the dial data.
To insert a pause (p)
Hold down for 1 second or more.

Sending dial data using the pause dial function

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Other settings" ► "Pause dial".

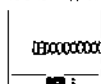


To delete dial data
Select "Delete" from the function menu.

■ As of January 2001, the paging service provided by NTT DoCoMo is known as QUICKCAST.

- 2 Press [Send] and enter the destination phone number.

To enter "+", press for 1 second or more.



To enter the phone number from the phonebook
Enter part of the phone number, and then press to search for the number.
Press to select a search method from the phonebook search screen.
Press to search the received call record, or to search the redial record.

- 3 Press or [Dial].



A call is made to the entered phone number, and when the call is connected, the stored dial data until the first pause (p) is displayed. No pause (p) appears.

- 4 Press or [Dial] to send the dial data.

Each time you press or [Dial], dial data until the next pause (p) is sent. Once the last number is sent, the call screen reappears.

To send all dial data at one time

Hold down for 1 second or more, and select "Send at one time" from the Send pause dial menu.

- You can send dial data to the other party you are talking by displaying the pause dial screen during a call and pressing [Send].
- You can also send dial data by entering the pause dial directly on the standby display. In this case, first dial the other party's phone number, enter a pause (p), and then enter dial data you want to send. After entering, press to make the call. Once you are connected, press again to send the dial data until the next pause (p).
- The videophone call disables the pause dial and you cannot send dial data after the pause.
- The signal may not be received depending on the device of the called side.

Prefix setting

Attaching a Number Before the Phone Number

Default setting "WORLD CALL" (009130010)

You can set your frequently called numbers (prefix) in advance. Once you have set, you can dial a phone number with a prefix at its head by using "Dialing", "Phonebook", "Received calls", "Dialled calls" or "Redial". The number for "Notify caller ID", etc. is useful if you have set it.

- Up to 7 prefixes can be stored.
- You can enter the following characters for a prefix number: 0 to 9, # and X.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Network setting" ► "Prefix setting".

- 2 Highlight <Not stored> and then press [Edit].

To change the contents of a stored prefix

Select a prefix name you want to change.

To delete a prefix

Highlight the item you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete all prefixes

Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

- 3 Enter the entry name.

Up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters can be entered for a prefix name.

Entering characters → p.298

- 4 Enter the number (prefix).

The prefix number can be up to 10 digits long.

- You can add a prefix to a phone number by selecting "Prefix" from the function menu when dialing, or displaying the phonebook details screen, "Received calls", "Dialled calls" and "Redial".
- You can edit the preset "WORLD CALL" (009130010) stored at purchase.

WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

WORLD CALL is a service provided to subscribers to NTT DoCoMo's digital mobile phone services that allows them to make international calls with their phones.

About WORLD CALL

- You can make calls to about 220 countries and regions around the world.
 - Charges for "WORLD CALL" will be billed together with your monthly FOMA call charge.
 - There is no application or monthly charge for this service.
- All FOMA subscribers can use "World Call" service without additional subscription.

Changing the International call dialing procedure

The "My Line" service is not available for mobile communication devices such as mobile phones. For this reason, the "My Line" service is not available when you use the WORLD CALL service to make an international call from the FOMA terminal. The procedure to make an international call from your FOMA terminal has changed as mentioned below in accordance with the introduction of the "My Line" service. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (excluding "010" from the dialing numbers below) is not available.

		Inquiries
WORLD CALL	From an ordinary (landline) phone	From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone
	0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English) ● You can call this number from any type of phone, including DoCoMo phones and PHS phones. ○ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.	151 (no area code)(toll free) (in Japanese only) ● You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

- 1 Dial 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code - the other party's phone number.

If the area code begins with "0", omit the "0" when you dial. However, you must dial "0" when calling general phones in Italy.

- 2 Press .

- 3 Press  to end the call.

You can use the "International videophone call" by making a call to an overseas customer*1 who uses a certain 3G mobile phone terminal in the videophone call mode after following the above dialing method.*2

*1: As of JXX, 2004, international videophone calls can be made among users of NTT DoCoMo (Japan), Hutchison3GUK (United Kingdom) and Hutchison3GKK (Hong Kong).

*2: Depending on the terminal the international videophone call is going to be connected to, the other party's image displayed on the FOMA terminal may be disrupted or you may not be able to connect to it.

*1-2: See DoCoMo's homepage for more information.



- "009130-010" is already stored in the "Prefix setting" (p.149).
- If your international phone carrier is not NTT DoCoMo, call your international phone carrier for information on how to make international calls.

Int'l dial setting

Settings for easy international calls

Default setting: Auto assist setting: AUTO Country Code setting: "日本" (Country Code: 81)
IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can change settings or add country codes for making international calls.
The settings that can be changed are as follows:

Setting Item	Description	See page
Auto assist setting	When you use the phonebook to make an international call from abroad, the first "0" in the phone number is automatically replaced with a set of "+" and the country code that are set under this function. When you make an international call from Japan, "+" is automatically replaced with the international access number set under this function.	Below
Country Code setting	Sets country codes and country names that you use for making international calls.	Below
IDD Prefix setting	Sets the international access number and international access name to be used when making an international call.	p.XXX

- "Int'l dial setting" cannot be changed while "Keypad dial lock" or "FDN setting" is set.

Setting the Auto assist setting

Perform this setting to automatically add "+" when making an international call.

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Network setting" ► "Int'l dial setting".

- 2 Select "Auto assist setting".

- 3 Select "AUTO".

To not add "+"
Select "OFF".

- 4 Select a country.

Setting the country code

Up to 3 country codes can be set.

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Network setting" ► "Int'l dial setting".

- 2 Select "Country Code".

- 3 Select <Not stored> and press  [Edit].

To edit an entry that is already set
Select an entry that is already set.

To delete a set entry

Highlight the entry to delete and open the function menu to select  **Delete** (trash).

To delete all the set entries

Open the function menu and select  **Delete all**.

- 4 Enter the country name.

Entering characters → p. XXX

- 5 Enter the country code.

Refer to [XXXXXX]/[F] for the country codes.

Changing the IDD Prefix setting

Only one IDD Prefix can be set.

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Network setting" ► "Int'l dial setting".

- 2 Select "IDD Prefix setting".

The IDD Prefix name and code currently set is displayed.

- 3 Press  [Edit] and enter the IDD Prefix name.

Entering characters → p. XXX

- 4 Enter the IDD Prefix Code.

Setting a Subaddress to Make a Call

Default setting ON

You can use "X" in a phone number as the delimiter and set the number after "X" as a subaddress. A subaddress is used for specified communication to a certain communication device through ISDN or the content selection from the "M-stage V Live".

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Other settings" ► "Subaddress setting".

To activate the Subaddress function
Select "ON".

To deactivate the Subaddress function
Select "OFF".

NOTE

- In the following cases, "X" does not work as the subaddress delimiter and is recognized as an ordinary phone number including "X".
 - "X" is placed at the beginning of a phone number.
 - "X" is placed immediately after the prefix number "166/184".
 - When there is a "X" mark right after the numbers entered in "Prata".

Automatically Connecting a Dropped Line

Default setting No tone

Even if your connection drops out due to poor radio wave condition, the FOMA terminal automatically tries to reconnect to the dropped phone number as soon as reception is restored. You can also set the alarm tone ringing pattern when a call is reconnected.

- During h-mode operation, no alarm sounds regardless of the "Reconnect control" setting.
- The wait time for call reconnection differs depending on radio wave condition and how the phone is used. In general, reconnection is possible in about 10 seconds.
- If radio wave condition suddenly becomes bad, a call may be disconnected with no alarm.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Talk" ► "Reconnect control".

Not to sound an alarm
Select "No tone".

To sound a high-tone alarm
Select "High tone".

To sound a low-tone alarm
Select "Low tone".

NOTE

- Waiting for call reconnection (in about 10 seconds at the longest) is also charged.
- The other party hears no sound during disconnection.

Reducing Ambient Noise to Make Your Phone Conversation Clearer

Default setting ON

The Noise reduction is a function that reduces ambient noise. This function enables to send your clear voice to the other party during a voice or videophone call even in the noisy place.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Talk" ► "Noise reduction".

To activate the Noise reduction
Select "ON".

To deactivate the Noise reduction
Select "OFF".

Using a Terminal without Using Your Hands <Optional>

By connecting your FOMA terminal with a handsfree compliant device (such as a car navigation unit), you can perform operations such as making or receiving voice/ videophone calls from a handsfree compliant device.

- The ring tone and displays during an incoming call operate in accordance with the settings of the FOMA terminal.
 - If a handsfree compliant device and the FOMA terminal are connected and the handsfree compliant device is set to emit sounds, the ring tone sounds from the handsfree-compliant device when a voice/ videophone call comes in, even though the FOMA terminal is in the manner mode or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
 - In the driving mode, the operation during an incoming call follows the "Driving mode" (p.82) settings.
 - When the Record message is set, the operation during an incoming call follows the "Record message" (p.84) settings.
 - If a handsfree compliant device and the FOMA terminal are connected and the FOMA terminal is set to emit sounds, the operation upon folding the FOMA terminal during a call depends on the setting of "Fold setting" (p.160). If your setting is to emit sounds from the handsfree compliant device, folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status regardless of the setting of "Fold setting".
- * This is an optional function that will become available when a handsfree compliant device is released. As of XX 2004, no handsfree-compliant device has been released.

Receiving an incoming voice call

Terminall 4
D30000000x

The call will be connected to the forwarding number whether the "Call forwarding" service is set to "Activate" or "Deactivate".

Press **[*] [6-PR]** during a call.

100

- Press  (Answer) or even any of the following keys to answer an incoming call (Any key answer).  to . If you can set to stop the ring tone by pressing any key. —p.153
- If you press  or  (Memo/Check) during an incoming call, the FOMA terminal enters into the "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" so that you can record the other party's message.
—p.136
- When the caller notifies the caller ID and the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear. If you store an image in the phonebook, the image appears. However, if the caller's phonebook entry was stored as secret data (p.201), only the caller's phone number appears with no name and no image. When the caller does not notify the caller ID, the reason for no caller ID informed appears.
- Up to 30 incoming calls can be stored in the "Received calls". When the caller notifies the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. If the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear.
- If you subscribe to the "Call waiting" service and you set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and "Call waiting" to "Activate", you will hear a signal tone during a call when another call arrives while you are talking. In this case, you can perform any of the following.
 - Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
 - Forward the incoming call to the voice mail center if you subscribe to the "Voice mail" service.
 - Forward the incoming call to the specified forwarding number if you subscribe to the "Call forwarding" service.
 For details, see p.279.
- When you receive a forwarded call, the phone numbers of the forwarding phone and the caller are displayed. Some source numbers may not be displayed.
- You cannot make calls to a FOMA terminal from internal office numbers, etc. which those do not allow you to enter an area code.

Answer selling

You can set the following operations:

Item	Description
Any key answer	You can press any of the following keys to answer an incoming call: to or as well as . However, videophone calls are not supported.
Quick silent	You can stop the ring tone and vibrator by pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOIMA terminal when a voice or videophone call comes in: to , , or . Even if the ring tone has been muted, the other party still hears the ring tone. For an incoming voice call, you can answer the call by pressing or . For an incoming videophone call, you can answer the call by pressing with the camera view or by pressing or [Answer] with a substitute image.
OFF	For an incoming voice call, you can answer the call only by pressing or [Answer]. For an incoming videophone call, only by pressing , or [Answer]. (When you press or [Answer], you can respond to the videophone call with a substitute image.)

Select 'OFF'

- Even if you set to "Quick silent", when the "Manner mode" is on, the FOMA terminal operates during the "Any key answer" mode.
- Even if the function is set to "Quick silent", a message saying "Quick silent..." will not appear in case a call comes from the caller in which images are stored in the phonebook when the videophone and "Display phonebook image" (d.181) are set to "ON".

You can set the following operations:

Item	Description
No tone	During a voice call, voice is muted. During a videophone call, voice is muted and the "Camera off" (p.88) is sent to the other party. No hold tone sounds. Unfolding the FOMA terminal returns to the previous conditions.
Tone on	A call is put on hold (holding). During a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone set in the "Select hold tone" (p.158) while your FOMA terminal is folded. The hold tone can also be heard from your FOMA terminal speaker. During a videophone call, the hold tone set in the "Select hold tone" is played and the my image sending (p.88) is sent to the other party. Unfolding the FOMA terminal returns to the previous conditions.
End the call	A call is terminated. This has the same effect as pressing (p.23).

- When the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, this function is disabled. Folding the FOMA terminal during a call does not change the call status. However, during a videophone call with camera view, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.

1 Select (Menu) > (Phone icon) > "Incoming call" > "Fold setting".

To mute voice when the FOMA terminal is folded

Select "No tone".

To play a hold tone when the FOMA terminal is folded

Select "Tone on".

To end a call when the FOMA terminal is folded

Select "End the call".

- Even if you set to "No tone" or "Tone on", this function is disabled while a voice memo is recorded.
- Even if you set to "Tone on", when you fold the FOMA terminal while you are talking to the 2nd person using the "Call waiting" (p.279), "No tone" works.

Using Dialed or Received Calls Records

When you make a call or receive a mail, your FOMA terminal records the caller's phone number or the sender's mail address as a record. You can use those records to check the caller or the sender, call a recorded phone number, or send a mail to a recorded mail address.

Using dialed/received calls record

Information such as a phone number you called, the caller's phone number and date and time is recorded as the dialed or received call record. If you cannot answer a call, the call is recorded as the missed call record. Voice calls, international voice calls, videophone calls, international videophone calls and packet communication for the dialed/ received/ missed call records are distinguished with their icons so that you can see the type of a record at a glance.

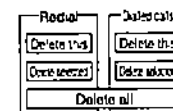
- Up to 30 dialed voice/videophone calls (including international voice/videophone calls) and up to 30 sent packet communication for a total of 60 records can be recorded in the dialed record. Likewise, up to 30 received voice/videophone calls and up to 30 received packet/S4K data communications for a total of 60 records can be recorded in the received call record.
- When the number of records exceeds the maximum number, the oldest records are automatically deleted.
- The dialed/received call record cannot be displayed during a videophone call.
- The access point (APN) of the sender is displayed for received packet communication.
- No date and time is recorded when the date and time is not set in "Set local time".

The differences between Dialed calls record and Redial

There are the differences between Dialed calls record and Redial.

	Dialed calls record	Redial
Type of record that is stored	Voice call, international voice call, videophone call, international videophone call, packet communication	Voice call, international voice call, videophone call
When you call the same phone number	Stored as a separate record	Overwritten and stored as the most recent call

- When you perform "Delete all", both "Redial" and "Dialed calls" will be all deleted. Even if you perform "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Dialed calls, the redial is not deleted. Note that the records of the redial remain. Deleting the redial — p.73



<Example: Using the received calls>

1 Select (Menu) > (Phone icon) > "Received calls".

You can also call up "Received calls" by pressing (Phone icon).

To use the dialed calls record

Select "Dialed calls".

2 Select the display type of received calls.

To display all received call records

Select "All calls".

To display missed calls records only

Select "Missed calls".

Unknown calls shows the number of records which have not been checked.

3 Select the record that you want to see.



To delete a record

Highlight the record you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete multiple records

Select "Delete selected" from the function menu, and then select the records you want to delete.

To delete all records

Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

To display the ringing time for missed calls from all calls list screen

Select "Ringing time" from the function menu.

Only missed calls with each ringing time are displayed on the list screen. Press (Phone icon) to return to the received calls list screen.

4 Check the contents of a record.



"Current record number/Total record number" appears in the upper right corner of the screen. The smaller the record number, the newer the record.

In case of missed calls, the ringing time is displayed next to the date and time.

To check the previous and next records

Press **←** or **→**.

Press **←** to display the previous (later) record, **→** to display the next (older) record.

However, for the dialed calls record, press **←** to display the previous (later) record,

→ to display the next (older) record.

To make a voice call to the displayed phone number

Display the record for which you want to make a voice call and press **☎**.

To make a videophone call to the displayed phone number

Display the record for which you want to make a videophone call and press **☎**.

To set an image to be sent during a videophone call

Select "Select image" from the function menu.

If you select "Me", the image of the in-camera will be sent. About other substitute images, see p.98.

To store the displayed phone number in the phonebook

Display the phone number you want to store, and select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu. Storing data in the phonebook → p.108

To send an i-mode mail from a record

Display the record from which you want to send an i-mode mail, and select "Compose message" from the function menu.

Displays a new mail creation page with the mail address stored in a phonebook entry entered in the address field.

Composing i-mode mail → p.152

Dialed/Received call's record icons

☎: Indicates that you made a voice call or had an incoming voice call.

☎: Indicates that you had an outgoing/international voice call.

☎: Indicates that you made a videophone call or had an incoming videophone call.

☎: Indicates that you had an incoming/outgoing international videophone call.

☎: Indicates that you had an incoming videophone call for the remote monitor.

☎: Indicates that you made a call for the packet communication.

☎: Indicates that you had an incoming call, etc. for the packet communication.

Missed call's record icons

☎: Indicates that you did not answer a voice call.

☎: Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international voice call.

☎: Indicates that you did not answer a voice call, and the caller left the message in "Record message".

☎: Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international voice call and the caller's message is recorded in "Record message".

☎: Indicates that you did not answer a videophone call.

☎: Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international videophone call.

☎: Indicates that you did not answer a videophone call, and the caller left the message in "Record message".

☎: Indicates that you did not answer an incoming international videophone call and that the caller's message is recorded in "Record message".

☎: Indicates that you did not connect to a videophone call for the remote monitor.

☎: Indicates that you did not answer an incoming call, etc. for the packet communication.

☎: Indicates that you did not receive an incoming call, etc. for the packet communication.

☎: Indicates that it is an unchecked missed call.

☎: Indicates that it is an unchecked international missed call.

☎: Indicates that you had an incoming videophone call during international roaming (while using a GSM/GPRS network).

Commons

● Switching the terminal off does not delete Dial records/Received calls. If you do not want other people to see the Dialed/Received phone numbers, either delete the record or set "Received calls" and "Redial/Dialed calls" in "Record display set" (p.206) to "OFF".

● When you receive a call while displaying Received calls, the record data will be updated and a message "Updating info" will appear. You cannot switch to other record displays while this message is showing.

● While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are recorded even for calls to/from parties whose names are stored in the phonebook.

Dialed calls records

● When you perform "Delete all", "Redial" and "Dialed calls" will be all deleted. Note that even if you perform "Delete this" or "Delete selected" in the dialed calls, the redial is not deleted.

Deleting the redial → p.73

● When making calls by calling up a phonebook stored as secret data in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", these calls are not recorded in the dialed record.

● When you set "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing", all the dialed records until then are deleted. The dialed calls after these functions are set will be recorded in the dialed record.

Received calls records

● "Missed calls" and "Unknown calls" are not displayed if there are no missed calls.

● The number of missed calls which have not been checked in yet will decrease as you check in.

● When the caller notifies his/her phone number, and the caller's phone number has already stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name are recorded in the received call record. If the caller does not notify the phone number, the reason for no caller ID appears.

● When you set "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock", all the received call records are deleted. After these functions are set, the received calls will be recorded in the received call record.

● When a call comes from a party that is not in the phonebook set in "Restrict dialing" if "Restrict dialing" is set, only the phone number is recorded.

● When the other party uses the dial-in service, the different phone number from its dial-in number may appear.

● You cannot use the received call record for packet communication for storing data in the phonebook or composing a new mail.

Volume

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting Level 4

You can adjust the volume of the other party's voice to any of 6 different levels from "Level 1" (min.) to "Level 6" (max.).

● You can also adjust the volume during a videophone call or in the handsfree mode.

● You cannot adjust the volume when a call is coming in.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

Press **↑** or **↓** during a call.

A short beep sounds and the Volume screen is displayed.

2 Adjust the earpiece volume.



To increase the volume by one level
Press .
To lower the volume by one level
Press .
Hold down or for 1 second or more to adjust the volume continuously.
If you do not perform any operation for more than 2 seconds or while the earpiece volume display is shown, the volume adjustment is terminated, returning to the call display.

Volume level at the moment

- You can adjust the volume by pressing or for 1 second or more during a call as well.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during standby

1 Hold down or for 1 second or more during standby.

2 Press or to adjust the earpiece volume.

To increase the volume by one level
Press .
To lower the volume by one level
Press .
Hold down or for 1 second or more to adjust the volume continuously.
If you do not press or within 2 seconds after displaying the Volume screen, the volume adjustment is terminated, and then the standby display reappears.

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting Phone/Video-phone: Level 4 Mail/Message: Level 4

You can adjust the ring volume that notifies you incoming voice/video-phone calls, mail or message request/free to any of 6 different levels. You can also mute the ring tone or set it to gradually ring louder (Step).

- You cannot adjust the ring volume during an incoming call.
- The ring volume for the "Phone/Video-phone" set by this function also applies to the volume of the "v-motion", "Melody", "Select ring tone" for voice/video-phone calls, the alarm tone for "Schedule" or "ToDo", melody play upon downloading from the site.
- The ring volume for "Mail/Message" set by this function also applies to sound volumes that can be heard from the list of ring tones including the "Select ring tone" for mail and Msg. Request/Free and the "Mail ring tone" in the Utilities.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Incoming call" ► "Ring volume".

2 Select the item you want to set.

To adjust the ring tone for incoming voice/video-phone calls
Select "Phone/Video-phone".

To adjust the ring tone for incoming I-mode mail, SMS, message request/free and packet communication
Select "Mail/Message".

3 Adjust the ring volume.



To increase the volume by one level
Press .
To lower the volume by one level
Press .
To set up Step Tone (to turn up the tone gradually)
Press at Level 6.
If you receive an incoming call at Step Tone, the ring volume becomes louder every 3 seconds from Silence, Steps 1 to 6.

To silence the ring tone
Press at Level 1.
If the setting is silent, no ring tone will sound.
You can check which functions have been set to "Silent" by the icon displayed on the standby display.
S₁: Set to "Phone/Video-phone" only
S₂: Set to "Mail/Message" only
S₃: Set to both "Phone/Video-phone" and "Mail/Message"

On hold

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When you cannot answer a call immediately during an incoming call, you can put the call on hold to keep the other party for a moment.

- The caller is charged for the time that the call is put on hold.

1 Press when a call comes in.



3 short tones "pip-pip-pip" sound and the call is put on hold.
The FOMA terminal plays an announcement in Japanese informing the caller that you are unable to answer the call now, asking the caller either to hold on for a moment or to call back a little later, while the call is on hold.
To terminate a call while the call is on hold
Press .
If the caller hangs up while the call is on hold
The call ends.

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press or [Answer].

When "Answer setting" (p.155) is set to "Any key answer", you can answer the call by pressing to or to .

- You can set an announcement the other party hears while the call is on hold in the "Select hold tone" (p.158).
- When "Ring volume" (p.75) for the "Phone/Video-phone" is set to "Silent", or the Manner mode is set to Off (p.135), no 3 short tones "pip-pip-pip" sounds. However, if the manner mode operation is set to "Original" and other than "Silent" is set to "Level", the FOMA terminal sounds.

Select hold tone

Setting an On Hold Tone

Default setting: On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

You can select a guidance message to be played while an incoming voice/videophone call or the current call is put on hold. You can set the following guidance messages:

Item	Type of guidance	Guidance description
On hold tone	Tone 1	"Sorry, unable to respond now. Wait or call later." (in Japanese)
	Tone 2	"Sorry, unable to respond now. Call later." (in Japanese)
Holding tone	Voice announce 1", Voice announce 2"	Your message recorded with the "Voice announce" → p.247
	Melody	Your message recorded with the "Voice announce" → p.247

※ "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" cannot be set unless you record voice with the "Voice announce".

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Talk" ► "Select hold tone".

2 Select the item you want to set.

To set an on hold tone
Select "On hold tone".
To set a holding tone
Select "Holding tone".

3 Select a guidance message you want to set.

To hear a guidance message
Press (Play).
You will hear guidance once.
Press to stop the guidance.

Driving mode

When You are Driving and Cannot Take Calls

Driving mode (in-car answering function) is an automatic answering service that helps to ensure your safety while driving. When you set the FOMA terminal to the driving mode, the caller hears an announcement saying that you cannot answer the voice/videophone call because you are driving, and the call is ended.

- You can set or cancel the driving mode only while the standby display is displayed. Even when "DRIVING" is displayed, you can set or cancel the driving mode.
- You can still make calls as usual when the FOMA terminal is in the driving mode.

Setting the driving mode

1 Hold down for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed.

12:05

The message indicating that the driving mode is set is displayed and "DRIVING" appears on the standby display.

To cancel the driving mode

With the driving mode set, hold down for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed.

The message indicating that the driving mode is displayed and "DRIVING" disappears.

- If you set the "Record message" (p.84) to "ON", the announcement of the driving mode is given priority so that the "Record message" function is temporarily disabled.
- If you make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118) during the driving mode, the message notifying of the cancellation of the driving mode is displayed, and then the driving mode is canceled.
- When the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the tones for the following events do not sound.
 - Incoming voice/videophone call
 - Incoming mail
 - Incoming Msg. Request/Free
 - Alarm clock
 - Schedule alarm
 - To Do alarm
 - Low voltage alarm
 - Charge confirmation alarm
 - Input software sounds

■ When the driving mode is set

Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when receiving a voice or videophone call. Instead, the call is recorded as a missed call record in the "Received calls" (p.151) and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.

The FOMA terminal does not sound when receiving mail as well.

Voice callers hear an announcement saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving, and the call ends. For videophone callers, the message is displayed notifying the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving, and the call is ended. However, when the power is off or "OFF" appears on the screen, the caller receives no announcement/message about driving but hears the same announcement when "DRIVING" is displayed.

■ When the network services are set and the driving mode is activated

When you receive an incoming voice/videophone call in your FOMA that sets both driving mode and the network service, the terminal operates as follows:

Service	When receiving voice calls	When receiving videophone calls
Voice mail	A message is taken after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving. ¹⁾	You cannot use the voice mail service with the videophone call. The call is terminated after displaying to the other party a message saying that you are driving.
Call forwarding	The call is transferred to the forwarding destination after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving. ²⁾	You can use the call forwarding service with the videophone call. The call forwarding service is given priority and an incoming videophone call is immediately forwarded to the forwarding destination. ³⁾
Bar nuisance call	- For the telephone number registered in Reject Nuisance Calls, the call is terminated after playing the guidance telling the other party that the incoming call is rejected. - For any other telephone numbers, the call is terminated after playing the guidance telling the other party that you are driving.	- You can use the bar nuisance call service with the videophone call. - For the telephone number stored in Reject Nuisance Calls, the bar nuisance call service is given priority and the call is terminated without playing the guidance telling the other party that the incoming call is rejected. - For any other telephone numbers, the call is terminated after playing the guidance to the other party that you are driving.
Caller ID request	- If the other party does not notify you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated after playing the guidance asking the other party to notify you of his/her telephone number. - If the other party notifies you of his/her telephone number, the call is terminated after telling the other party that you are driving.	You cannot use the caller ID request service with the videophone call. The call is terminated after displaying to the other party a message saying that you are driving.

- ※1: When the ringing time of the voice mail service is set to 0 second, no driving mode announcement is played.
- ※2: When the ringing time of the call forwarding service is set to 0 second, no driving mode announcement is played.
- ※3: The videophone call cannot be transferred unless the forwarding setting is compatible with 3G-324M (p.87).

Checking Missed Calls and New Mail

With the FOMA terminal folded, you can check whether you have received missed calls and new mail with sound, vibration, lighting/flash of the Incoming call lamp.

- This function notifies you of the receiving when the "Missed call" or "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- You cannot use this function to check a missed call or a new mail in the following cases:
 - ALL lock
 - PIM lock
 - When the Side keys guard is "ON"
 - When the Info notice setting is "OFF"

Setting notification of missed calls or new mail <Info notice setting>

Default setting ON

1 Select (Menu) ► (Info notice setting) ► "Incoming call" ► "Info notice setting".

- To notify with sound
Select "ON".
- To disable "Info notice setting"
Select "OFF".

Checking Missed Calls and New Mail

When you press (Memo/Check) with the FOMA body folded, you can check missed calls and new mails. Checking operation is as follows:

Info notice setting	When there are missed calls or new mail	When there are neither missed calls nor new mail
Sound	Sound/vibration Short double tones "p-p-pip-pip" sound with about 1 second vibration	Sound/vibration Short tones "p-p-pip-pip" sound with about 0.2 second vibration.
	Color of the Incoming call lamp The Incoming call lamp lights in the color set in "Phone" or "Mail" of the "Illumination" for about 5 seconds. When there are both missed calls and new mails, each color lights up alternately.	Color of the Incoming call lamp The Incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 12" for about 5 seconds.

※: If the Incoming call lamp is set to "Gradation", the lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls and "Color 1" for new mail.



- This function can not check if the h-mode center has stored new mail.
- When the "Vibrator" (p.167) for the "Phone" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- While the manner mode is set (p.135), the FOMA terminal notifies you of missed calls and new mail with vibration without sound. However, if the manner mode operation is set to "Original" and other than "Silent" is set to the "Phone vol.", the FOMA terminal sounds. If the "Vibrator" is set to "OFF" in "Original", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

Record message

Having the Caller Leave a Message

Default setting Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds

When you are unable to answer voice or videophone calls, you can set the FOMA terminal to record a message from the caller.

- You can set an answer message to be played before a caller leaves a message.
- You can record up to 5 voice messages, each lasting about 20 seconds.
- You can start the record message by using "Quick record message" (p.136) even if the record message is not set.

Setting the record message

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Record message".

2 Select the item you want to set.

To set "Record message"
Select "ON"
Go to Step 3.
Not to set "Record message"
Select "OFF"

3 Select an answer message.

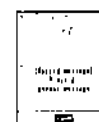
Japanese 1 : The message "I cannot answer your call right now. Please leave your name and message within 20 seconds after the beep. Even for a videophone call, only voice message can be received." is played in Japanese.
Japanese 2 : The message "Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep. Only voice message even for a videophone call. Sorry." is played in Japanese.
English : The message "I can't take your call now. Please leave a message. When you call by videophone, you can leave a voice message." is played.
Voice announce 1, 2 : The voice you recorded in the "Voice announce" (p.247) is played. If no announcements are recorded, these are not displayed.
Highlight Answer message and press (Play), then the message comes out from the speaker.

4 Enter the ringing time (000 to 120 seconds).

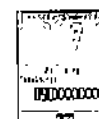
Enter the duration by 3 digits. If you enter a number other than 000-120, a message appears notifying you that the number cannot be specified. Once you enter 3-digit duration, the record message is automatically specified and "ON" is displayed on the standby display.
To set the display time
Press (Set) without entering time.

- The ringing time of the record message cannot be set to the same time as that of the "Remote monitor" or "Automatic answer".
- To give a higher priority to the record message function over the "Voice mail" service (p.271) or "Call forwarding" service (p.276) when the service is activated together with this function, set the shorter ringing time for the record message than that for the voice mail service or call forwarding service.
- You can set different answer messages for a specific phone number or group in the "Utilites".

When a call comes in while the record message is set to "ON"



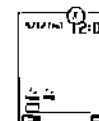
After the specified time passed, the record message function is activated and the caller hears the set answer message. When receiving a videophone call, the caller also receives the "Voice Only/Record Msg." message image.
<音声録画/Voice Only> message image.



When a record message starts being recorded, the Recording screen is displayed. You can hear the other party's voice from the earpiece speaker of the FOMA terminal during the recording.

To answer a voice call
Press or (Answer).

To answer a videophone call
If you answer the call with the camera view mode, press while with a substitute image, press or (Answer).



When recording ends, the screen returns to the standby display with the "Missed call" and "Record message" desktop icons.
The "Missed call" icon changes to "1" when there is 1 recorded message, to "2" when 2 recorded messages, and to "3" when 3 recorded messages.
Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos → p.245

- You cannot use Record message when "PIM lock" is display.
- When receiving a videophone call, only a voice message is recorded.
- During "PIM lock", even if the record message is set to "ON", this setting is changed to "OFF". In this period, "Record message" desktop icon appears.
- Once there are 5 recorded messages on your FOMA terminal, the terminal can no longer record messages from callers and the callers hear no answer message. To record more messages, you must erase recorded messages. → p.245
- When Original Manner mode is set and "Record message" in the Original Manner mode is set to "ON", a caller can record a message even if "Record message" is not set to "ON". If there are already 5 messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the manner mode setting.
- When you activate the "Voice mail" service, new voice messages are stored in the voice mail service center even if 5 record messages are already recorded.
- You cannot receive an incoming call while the FOMA terminal is recording a message. The caller hears a busy tone.
- If the caller notices the caller ID, it is displayed on your FOMA terminal display. If the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and name appear.

Important

The contents of the messages may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all information recorded in voice messages. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.

Quick record message

Recording the Caller's Message during an Incoming Call

Even if the "Record message" is not set to "ON", you can start recording the other party's message by pressing a key during an incoming call.

- 1 Press **[M]** or **[C]** (Memo/Check) during an incoming call.

Message recording starts and the manner mode is set at the same time.

NOTE

- If the manner mode operation is set to "Original" and the "Record message" to "OFF", the "Record message" is activated.
- If there are already 5 messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the manner mode setting without activating the "Record message".
- When the call ends, the terminal is still in the manner mode. Hold down **[M]** for 1 second or more to cancel the setting.
- While "PIN lock" is set, even if you set the manner mode, the "Record message" is not activated.

Playing/Deleting Record Messages and Voice Memos

You can play or delete a message recorded with the "Record message" or "Voice memo".

Playing

For record messages of voice calls, "**[M]**" appears; for record messages of videophone calls, "**[V]**" appears. When a voice memo is recorded, "**★**" appears.

- If the caller notifies his/her caller ID, the caller's phone number appears while playing the record message.
- If the caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name also appears.

- 1 Select **[M]** (Menu) **[M]** **[M]** "Play/Erase msg."

- 2 Select the item you want to play.

A short beep sounds and playing starts. When playing ends, a short double beep "pipi" sounds and "Playing" disappears.

To play the next message

Press **[M]** (Memo/Check).

Pressing **[M]** (Memo/Check) plays the next new message. The voice memo is played last.

To cancel the playing after it has started

Press **[M]**.

To make a voice call to the displayed phone number during playing a message

Press **[M]**.

To make a videophone call to the displayed phone number during playing a message

Press **[M]**.

To delete the message being played

Press **[M]** (Erase).

NOTICE

- You can also play a message by pressing **[M]** (Memo/Check) while the standby display is displayed.
- If no "Record message" and no "Voice memo" is recorded, a message notifying you that there is no message recorded appears.

Deleting

- 1 Select **[M]** (Menu) **[M]** **[M]** "Play/Erase msg."

- 2 Highlight the item you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete all record messages

Select "Delete rec. msg."

To delete all record messages and a voice memo

Select "Delete all".

- Press **[M]** (Erase) during playing a message to delete the message being played.

Important

The contents of the messages may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory may be lost. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all information recorded in voice messages. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.

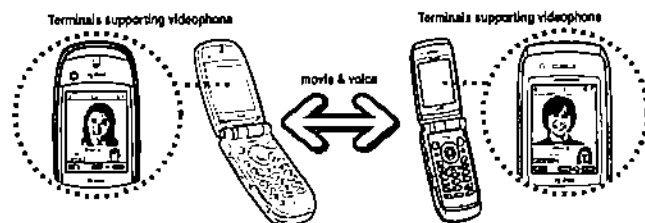
● Making/Receiving a Videophone Call

About a Videophone Call	000
Making a Videophone Call	000
Receiving a Videophone Call	000
Enjoying a Chara-den	000
Settings for Making a Videophone Call	000
Setting the Image to be Sent to the Other Party	000
Setting the Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call	000
Setting the Remote Monitor	000

About a Videophone Call

You can use the videophone function with another DoCoMo videophone enabled terminal. You can also send substitute images such as still images and messages and Chara-den instead of your self-portrait.

- The videophone function can be enjoyed between the terminals which support the DoCoMo videophone function even if their models differ from each other.
- DoCoMo videophones conform to "3G-324M **", the international standard established by the 3GPP-*. You cannot connect with the videophone-support terminal that operates on a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.
 - *1 : 3G-324M
An international standard for the third generation videophones.
 - *2 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standard organization established for the development of common technological specifications related to the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).
- Communication speed of the videophone call is 64Kbps.



How to view displays during videophone calls

- ① Main display (displays the camera view of the other party by default).
- ② Sub display (displays the camera view of your own by default).
- ③ Indicates call time
- ④ Indicates current time
- ⑤ Indicates the setting status for videophone calls

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 64K video calling | Handsfree OFF |
| Voice transmitting | Handsfree ON |
| Voice transmitting failure | Photo mode/Close-up |
| Video transmitting | Photo mode/Scenery |
| Video transmitting failure | Photo mode/Portrait |
| Camera image transmitting | Key operation/DTMF mode* |
| Substitute image set in the 'Select image' transmitting | Key operation/Emo'n action |
| Chara-den transmitting | Key operation/Parts action |



* For details of DTMF, see p.338

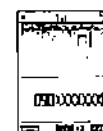
Making a Videophone Call

If you make a videophone call, an in-camera image will be sent to the other party. You can also switch it to the out-camera to send the image by pressing (Change). You can set it to send other image (an alternative image, etc.) instead of the camera image as well. → p.98

- To visually communicate with the other party, use the earphone/microphone with a switch. Please see p.257 for the earphone/microphone with a switch.
- You can use DoCoMo's international telephone service "WORLD CALL" to have an international videophone call. → p.73
- If the voice or video transmitting fails, the call does not recover automatically. Make a videophone call again.

<Example: Switching to Handsfree mode>

- 1 Dial the other party's phone number, starting with the area code.



Even if you are within the same area code as the number you are dialing, you must enter the full number, including the area code.

[Area code] - [City code] - [Subscriber number]

To call a mobile phone

090-XXXX-XXXX

or

080-XXXX-XXXX

To call a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX

- 2 Press and make a videophone call.



* flashes while a videophone is being dialed and lights during a call.

The digital communication charge is incurred when this screen is displayed

- 3 After the videophone call is connected, press (H-S-ON) to switch to the handsfree mode.

* appears and you can hear the voice of the other party over the speaker. When you press again, the handsfree mode is turned off and changes to .

The voice of the other party can be heard around your FOMA. Choose the place where the sound does not bother other people to use the handsfree mode.

When sending the out-camera view

Press (Change).

Pressing (Change) switches between the in-camera and out-camera (Camera Switch).

To put a videophone call on hold

Press **[SCL]**.

The other party can hear the hold tone and view the "Holding" image on the videophone display of one's terminal. To cancel putting on hold, press **[SCL]**. To answer an on-hold videophone call with a camera view, press **[III]**. To answer with a substitute image, press **[SCL]**.

To use an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not have to switch to the handsfree mode. You can hear the voice of the other party over the earphone.

4 When you finish the conversation, press **[END]**.

The call duration appears, and then the videophone call ends.

Videophone call functions

You can make various settings on videophone calls such as the size and quality of images you send.

Handsfree : Sounds the other party's voice from the speaker.

Front camera/Rear camera : Sends the image to the other party by switching between Front camera/Rear camera during a videophone call.

Zoom : Zooms in and sends your camera view to the other party. → p.96

Camera/Other image : You can change the view of the displays during a videophone call. → p.97

Image quality : Selects the image quality with emphasis on quality or motion. → p.97

Brightness : Adjusts the brightness of your camera view. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. → p.267

White balance : Adjusts your camera view to natural colors according to the light source. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. → p.268

Color mode set : Sends your camera view in sepia (dark brown) or black and white.

The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. → p.268

Photo mode : Sets the shooting mode according to the subjects. The setting operation is the same as that of the camera. → p.267

Chara-den : Select the character displayed in Chara-den, display a list of actions and switch the action mode. → p.324 and p.325

Display light : Sets the display light for the display during a videophone call. → p.100

Dsp Setting V-phone : Sets the image and its size to be displayed on the main screen. → p.100

Call time display : Switches ON/OFF of the call time display shown on the screen during a videophone call.

Send DTMF tone : Sets/cancels the Send mode of the push signal during the Chara-den. The FOMA terminal always enters the Send mode of the push signal during a videophone call except Chara-den.

Own number : Displays your own phone number during a videophone call.

Hi : "Handsfree", "Front camera/Rear camera", "Zoom", "Color mode set", "Photo mode", "Send DTMF tone" and "Own number" go back to the default values when you finish the videophone call.

When failing to make a videophone call

When a videophone call fails, the reason for the failure is displayed. However, depending on the situation, the reason for the failure may not appear. Depending on the type of the phone you are connected to or on your network service subscription status, the actual state of the other party and the displayed message may differ.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You have dialed a wrong phone number.
Busy	The line is busy.
Out of service area or power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or is turned off.
Driving mode	The other party's phone is in the driving mode.
Failed to connect	Reasons other than above.

- You can make a videophone call with steps 1 and 2 reversed. In this case, if you call a wrong number, please press **[END]** to delete the display and then dial the correct number.
- When making a videophone call, you can use an entry in the phonebook, "Redial" or "Received calls" as well as a voice call.
- When you can make an emergency call (110, 119, and 118) on the videophone from the FOMA terminal, your call is automatically switched to a voice call. However, such calls cannot be made when "All lock" is set.
- Connection is not made if you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function, the other party's videophone is out of the service area or is turned off. If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function with the "Voice call auto switch" (p.95) set to "ON", your call is rejected before videophone connection is activated and is automatically redialed as a voice call. Note that this operation may not work when you make a wrong call such as a call to the access points for ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS, or a call to an ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (p.87) (as of XXX, 2004). Be aware that you may be charged for a communication charge in this case.
- While "Voice call auto switch" (p.95) is set to "ON", if a videophone call cannot be placed, such a call is automatically switched to redial as a voice call.
- Once the videophone call is connected, it is not redialed as a voice call.
- You cannot make a voice call or connect to i-mode during a videophone call.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call during a videophone call, the call is recorded as a "Missed call" record in the "Received calls" (p.151) and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- i-mode mail and message request/free cannot be received during a videophone call and are once stored in the i-mode center. Receive these stored i-mode mail and message request/free by "i-mode checking" (p.105 and p.180) after the videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- When "Recharge battery", indicating low voltage alarm, is displayed during a videophone call, the other party sees the message "カメラオフ Camera Off" and the videophone call is disconnected after approximately 20 minutes. Even if you recharge the battery before the call is disconnected, the "カメラオフ Camera Off" message remains on the screen.
- When no image is sent due to the other party's setting, a substitute image is displayed.
- Even when a substitute image is displayed during a videophone call, the digital communication charge is charged.
- You cannot switch to the Handsfree operation while making a videophone call.
- Ending a videophone call turns the handsfree operation OFF.
- You can adjust the "Volume" (p.78) even when the Handsfree mode is set.
- During the Handsfree operation, if you increase the "Volume" level, it may cause noise depending on your surrounding.
- If the background noise is loud during the Handsfree operation, you may not be able to talk in a good condition such as intermittent voice reception. In this case, use the earphone/microphone.
- The videophone call duration is calculated as the "Digital communication" time. → p.161
- You can switch to the handsfree mode when the manner mode is set. You return to the manner mode when you select "OFF" in the handsfree mode or disconnect the call. The handsfree mode can be returned even if you set the manner mode when the handsfree mode is set.

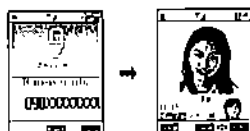
Receiving a Videophone Call

This section explains how to answer an incoming videophone call.

When you cannot answer a videophone call immediately, you can receive the call with a substitute image without allowing your own camera view to be displayed on the other party's screen.

- You cannot receive a videophone call during a voice call, i-mode operation, i-mode mail transmission and packet data communication.

1 When a videophone call comes in, press **[F1]** to answer it.



To answer with a substitute image

Press **[F1]** or **[F2]** (Answer).

The substitute image is displayed on the other party's display.

Even after answering with the substitute image, you can switch to the camera view by pressing **[F3]**.

When using the earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

Press the switch of the earphone/microphone with switch.

You can answer the videophone call with a substitute image. When "Automatic answer" (p.260) is "OFF", you can automatically answer a videophone call with a substitute image after the specified ringing time has elapsed.

To switch between the camera view and a substitute image

Press **[F3]**.

While the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the same operation can be performed.

To put an incoming videophone call on hold

Press **[F4]**.

The image of "On hold" is displayed on the other party's video screen. Press **[F1]** to answer the videophone call put on hold with a camera image, and **[F2]** or **[F3]** (Answer) to answer it with a substitute image.

To reject an incoming videophone call intentionally

Select "Call rejection" from the function menu.

To forward an incoming videophone call

Select "Call forwarding" from the function menu.

A subscription to the "Call forwarding service" (p.278) is required. The call will be connected to the forwarding number whether the "Call forwarding" service is "Activate"/"Deactivate".

2 After the videophone call is connected, press **[F5]** to switch to the handsfree mode.

"**[F5]**" appears and you can hear the voice of the other party over the speaker. When you press **[F5]** again, the handsfree mode is turned off and "**[F5]**" changes to "**[F5]**".

The voice of the other party can be heard around your FOMA. Choose the place where the sound does not bother other people to use the handsfree mode.

To send the out-camera view

Press **[F6]** (Change).

Pressing **[F6]** (Change) switches between the in-camera and out-camera (Camera Switch).

To put a videophone call on hold

Press **[F4]**.

The other party can hear the hold tone and view the "Holding" image on the videophone display of one's terminal. To cancel putting on hold, press **[F5]**.

To answer an on-hold videophone call with a camera view, press **[F1]**. To answer with a substitute image, press **[F2]**.

When using an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not have to switch to the Handsfree mode. You can hear the voice of the other party over the earphone.

3 When you finish the conversation, press **[F7]**.

The call duration appears, and then the videophone call ends.

- You cannot take a videophone call by the "Any key answer" function even when the "Answer setting" (p.159) is set to "Any key answer". (If "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent", pressing any key stops the ring tone only.)
- Even while a substitute image is displayed during a videophone call, the digital communication charge is charged to the videophone caller.
- You can change a substitute image in the "Select image" (p.98).
- Even if the "Voice mail" service is "Activate", an incoming videophone call cannot be connected to the voice mail service center. An incoming videophone call is continued.
- Even if "Call forwarding" service is "Activate", an incoming videophone call cannot be forwarded unless the destination is a videophone-support device that conforms to 3G-324 (p.87). Make sure the forwarding destination before making the forward setting. The videophone caller cannot view the guidance for forwarding calls.
- When no image is sent to your FOMA terminal due to the other party's setting, a substitute image is displayed.
- You cannot switch to the handsfree operation while receiving a videophone call.
- Entering a videophone call turns the handsfree operation OFF.
- You can adjust the "Volume" (p.78) during the handsfree operation.
- When the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, you can answer a videophone call with the camera view by pressing **[F1]** or with a substitute image by pressing **[F2]** as same as the case with no earphone connected.

Enjoying a Chara-den

When you make a videophone call, send a substitutive animated image instead of your image.

You can put expression on a Chara-den substitutive animated image by moving its mouth in reaction to sound or moving its limbs with key operation.

- Please set up the following functions in advance in order to enjoy Chara-den:

- Set the "Camera off" to "Chara-den". → p.98

- Set the "Camera image setting" to "OFF". → p.98

- When you receive a videophone call, press **[F5]** to answer it in Chara-den.

- To switch from Camera Image to Chara-den, press **[F6]**.

- For details of Chara-den such as switching to Chara-den or checking its action, see p.324 and p.325.

1 Press the dial key to operate Chara-den



Chara-den



Action list

Pressing the dial key expresses the action assigned to that particular button.

To switch the Action mode

Select "Chara-den"/"Change action" from the function menu.

Every time when you select "Change action", you can switch the "whole action" and "parts action".

The "whole action" is an action mode to express movements of the whole Chara-den such as feelings. Press **[F7]** or **[F8]** to express them.

The "parts action" is an action mode to express partial movements of Chara-den such as a face and arms and legs. Press **[F9]** or **[F10]** to express them.

To confirm the action

Select "Chara-den"/"Action list" from the function menu.

The actions that can be operated and the buttons assigned to those actions are displayed.

You can select an action using **[F1]** to execute it.

If Press **[F2]** to display the list of actions

To switch to another Chara-den

Select "Chara-den"/"Switch chara-den" from the function menu.

- If "Send DTMF tone" is selected from the function menu, pressing a key sends the pulse signal so that you cannot move Chara-den with key operation. Selecting "DTMF tone OFF" from the function menu enables to move Chara-den with key operation.
About DTMF → p.338

Settings for Making a Videophone Call

You can perform a setting to have videophone calls that could not be placed switched to voice calls.

Automatically redialing a failed videophone call as a voice call <Voice call auto switch>

Default setting OFF

When the other party you call cannot answer your videophone call because the phone is not a videophone terminal or because the other party is a "Dual network service" (p.285) subscriber and currently on the move service, you can redial the number automatically for a voice call.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Video-phone" ► "Voice call auto switch".

To redial automatically as a voice call

Select "ON".

To not redial automatically as a voice call

Select "OFF".

- When redialing a failed videophone call as a voice call, you are charged for a voice call charge.
- When redialing the same number more than once, that number is recorded as one record and the most recent call in the "Dialled calls".
- Once a videophone call is connected, redialing to the same phone number as a voice call is not performed.
- Even though "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", automatic redial may not be performed depending on network or the other end's condition, such as when the other party is out of service area or on another call.

Setting the Image to be Sent to the Other Party

You can set the image to be sent to the other party during a videophone call.

Zooming In the Image to be sent

You can enlarge and send your camera view to the other party during a videophone call.

- The maximum magnification is about 2 times (2 steps) for sending the in-camera view and about 6.5 times (16 steps) for sending the out-camera view.
- If you switch the in-camera and out-camera during a videophone call, each zoom ratio remains. When you exit the videophone call, the zoom returns to the normal.
- When sending a substitute image, you cannot zoom in the image during a videophone call.
- You cannot zoom in the other party's camera view.

- 1 Press during a videophone call to display the zoom bar.

- 2 Adjust the zoom ratio.



To zoom in
Press

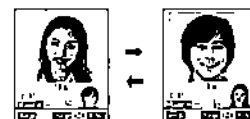
To zoom out
Press

Switching camera images on the other party's and your own sides

Default setting Main screen : The other party's camera image
Sub screen : The camera image on your own side

You can switch the main screen to the camera image on your own side and the sub screen to that on the other party's side during a videophone call. It will be convenient to use this function if you want to check the image being sent to the other party on the main screen, etc.

- 1 Select "Camera Image/Other Image" from the function menu during a videophone call.



Every time you select "Camera image/Other image", the images on the main and sub screens switch.

Setting the Image quality for transmitting images

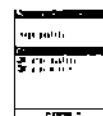
Default setting Normal

You can select the image quality for images transmitted from/to the other party with emphasis on image quality or motion.

- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Video-phone" ► "Image quality".

- 2 Select the image quality for transmitting images.



Normal : Displays image quality and motion at standard settings.
Prefer quality : Transmits images with fine quality (in frame-by-frame motion). Effective when significantly motionless.
Prefer motion : Transmits images in smooth motion (with rough image quality). Effective when significantly active.

- You can also set the image quality during a videophone call by selecting "V-phone settings" "Image quality" from the function menu. However, after the videophone call ends, this temporary setting returns to the default setting.

Setting whether to send a camera view image while making a call

Default setting: ON

You can select the image to be sent to the other party from between the camera view and a substitute image when making a videophone call.

- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Video-phone" ► "Camera Image sending".

To send the camera view
Select "ON".

To send a substitute image
Select "OFF".

- Regardless of the setting of the function, you can switch between the camera view and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- You can change a substitute image to be sent in the "Select image" settings.

Setting the image to send during a videophone call

Default setting: On hold, Holding, Record message: Pre-installed, Camera off; Chara-den

You can set a image to send instead of your camera view.

- The image that can be set for this function is a JPEG file with the VGA size (640 × 480 dots) or less.
Please note that if you set up an image exceeding the Mail (Large) size (176 × 144 dots), it is reduced to the Mail (Large) size (176 × 144 dots).
- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

<Example: Setting a substitute image>

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Video-phone" ► "Select Image".

2 Select "Camera off".

Set a substitute image to send instead of your camera view during a videophone call.

To set an image to send while a call is on hold
Select "On hold".

To set an image to send while a call is holding
Select "Holding".

To set an image to send while an answer message for record messages is playing
Select "Record message".

3 Select an image to send.

To send a message only

Select "Pre-installed".

To send a message with an image

Select "Original" and then select the image to send.

How to set an image → p.301

To send Chara-den

Select "Chara-den".

The Chara-den set in the "Substitute image" for Chara-den is sent.

About Chara-den → p.324

To check the set image

Highlight the item you want to check, and then press  (Play).

Messages to be sent

Messages to be sent are as follows:

While a call is on hold:  On Hold

While a call holding:  Holding

When a substitute image is sent:  Camera Off

While an answer message is operating:  Record Msg. <音声メッセージ/Voice Only>

- When an image of the Mail (Large) size or larger is reduced, the aspect ratio may be changed.
- The image is reduced only on the display with no influence on the original image data.
- You can set an image to send by selecting "Select image" from the function menu in the details screens of the dial input screen, phonebook, redial, and dialled/received calls. You can also set it by selecting "Select image" in the Phone To function (p.112).
However, when the videophone call ends, this temporary setting return to the original setting.
- Even if a substitute image is set to "Chara-den", while shooting in the continuous mode or displaying the check mode screen, the Chara-den is not sent but the "Pre-installed" image is sent.

Setting the Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call

You can set the image to be displayed during a videophone call and the display light.

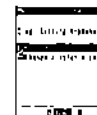
Setting the image and its size to be displayed on the main screen <Disp. Setting V-phone>

Default setting: Main display: Other image Change display size: Main display size

- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept. In addition, if you change the settings of this function during the videophone call, the changed settings are reflected.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Video-phone" ► "Disp. Setting V-phone".

2 Select the item you want to set.



To switch the camera view between main and sub screens

Select "Main display".

Select the main screen image from the other party's image (Other image) or your own image (Camera image).

To set the image display size

Select "Change display size".

Select the image display size from "Main display size/Real size".

NOTE

- You can also make the above settings during a videophone call by selecting "Change display size" from the function menu. In that case, the original ringing is also changed.
- If the display is not in motion smoothly during the videophone call, "Real size" is recommended to set "Change display size".

Setting the display light during a videophone call

Default setting All time ON

- Even though a videophone call is finished, the settings of this function are kept.

1 Select "Display light" from the function menu during a videophone call.



2 Select the item you want to set.

To turn the display light on all the time during a videophone call
Select "All time ON".

To turn the display light on for 15 seconds during a videophone call
Select "15 seconds ON".

NOTE

- The setting of this function is given priority over that in the "Display light" (p.183) for the "Display" during a videophone call.

Setting the Remote Monitor

Default setting Other ID: Not stored Ringing time: 5 seconds Set: OFF

Through the camera view of your FOMA terminal, you can check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside. You can also check local conditions such as a plant or operation status from a remote location.

Remote monitoring can be activated between a videophone-support terminal conforming to 3G-324M (p.87) and a FOMA terminal, or between FOMA terminals. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

- You can carry out remote monitoring only if the recipient of the remote monitor has the telephone number of the person who monitors registered in advance and the remote monitor setting is "ON".

Preparing the called side terminal

At the receiving terminal of remote monitoring (the called side), perform the remote monitor settings such as the calling side's phone number (Other ID) and the time until remote monitor operation starts (Ringing time).

- Up to 5 phone numbers can be stored for the Other ID.
- If the "Manner mode" or "Diving mode" is set to the called side, remote monitor data cannot be received.

1 Select (Menu) "Video-phone" "Remote monitor", and then enter the security code.

Security code — p.182

2 Select "Other ID".

3 Select the item <Not stored>.

To change previously stored other ID

Select the other ID to be changed

To enter from the "Phonebook", "Dialed calls" or "Received calls"

Select "Look-up address" from the function menu, then select the item.

To delete one Other ID

Highlight the one you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete all the Other ID

Select "Delete all".

4 Enter the Other ID.

If you enter, the list of the Other ID reappears. Press to return to the remote monitor screen.



5 Select "Ringing time" and enter the ringing time (003 to 120 seconds).

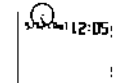


Enter the time in 3 digits. After entering a 3-digit time, the ringing time is set.

To set the displayed time

Press [Set] without entering a number.

6 Select "Set" on the Remote monitor screen, and select "ON".



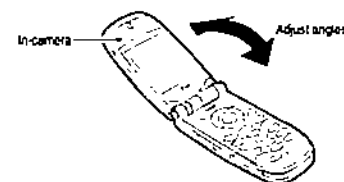
The remote monitor is set and the appears on the standby display.

To receive no remote monitoring

Select "OFF".

7 Set up the FOMA terminal.

In remote monitoring, the in-camera view is transmitted to the calling side. Therefore, set up the FOMA terminal of the called side with the power on and opened. If set with folded, the remote monitoring incoming call is disabled and the call is rejected.



- The ringing time cannot be set to the same time as that for the "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time for the "Call forwarding" service set at the called side is shorter than that set for remote monitoring, "Call forwarding" is given priority. To give a higher priority to remote monitoring, set the shorter ringing time than that set for the "Call forwarding" service.
- If you set the remote monitoring setting to "ON" and then delete all the other side numbers, you cannot perform remote monitoring although the "Setting" remains "ON" and [遠隔監視アイコン] remains displayed.

Performing remote monitor

Make a videophone call to the called side FOMA terminal to check the camera view of the called side.

- To perform remote monitoring, you must make a videophone call from the FOMA terminal that is stored at the called side terminal as Other ID with caller ID informed.
- At the called side, no camera view of the calling side appears and no voice sounds.
- On remote monitoring, the FOMA terminal at the monitored side cannot switch the camera image to a substitute image.
- When the called side terminal is set to the "Manner mode" or "Driving mode", no remote monitoring is performed.

1 Make a videophone call to the side to be monitored.



Screen of the called side

After the ringing time set at the called side has elapsed, the remote monitor starts. The camera view of the called side is displayed at the calling side and voice sounds. If you switch to the Handsfree mode by pressing [H], you can hear the called side's voice from the speaker. When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, you can hear the called side's voice from the earphone without switching to the Handsfree mode.

To answer a videophone call at the called side without receiving remote monitoring

Press [H] to display your camera view or [C] to display a substitute image before the ringing time is over.

- You can receive an incoming call from the number stored in the Remote Monitor while All lock is set.
 - When the caller ID is not notified, the remote monitor does not start and the incoming call is treated as a usual videophone call.
 - When "Call acceptance" is set at the called side for a phone number other than Other ID, or "Call rejection" is set for a phone number of Other ID, incoming videophone calls are rejected and the remote monitor cannot be performed.
 - You cannot perform the remote monitor when you set the remote monitor and the following functions at the same time.
 - Driving mode
 - Manner mode
 - Call rejection/acceptance
 - Reject unknown
 - When you set the Remote monitor and Record message at the same time, the Remote monitor is given priority even if the ringing time of Record message is set shorter than that of the remote monitor setting.
 - When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, the ring tone sounds through both the earphone and speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
 - The FOMA terminal emits the ring tone exclusively for the remote monitor and you cannot change it.
 - The ring tone for the remote monitor sounds at the level set in the "Ring volume". If you set it to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the ring tone sounds at the "Level 2".
 - The flashing color and pattern become "Gradation" and "Standard" respectively regardless of the "Illumination" setting when a remote monitoring incoming call comes.
 - You cannot put a call on hold while a remote monitoring incoming call comes. Press [H] to end the remote monitor.
 - When the remote monitor setting is "ON" at the called side, an incoming videophone call from a phone number stored as Other ID is recorded as a received call record of the remote monitor. If the remote monitor is not performed, the call is recorded in the "Received calls" (p.151) as a missed call record of the remote monitor.
 - Folding the FOMA terminal of the called side during remote monitoring causes the following behavior according to the setting in "Fold setting".
 - Hold : The holding image is sent to the calling side.
 - No tone : The substitute image is sent to the calling side
 - End the call : Remote monitoring is terminated.
- However, when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, a substitute image is displayed regardless of the setting in "Fold setting".
- During remote monitoring, both the calling and called sides cannot receive a voice or videophone call. If you receive a voice or videophone call during remote monitoring, the call is recorded as a missed call record in the "Received calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
 - During remote monitoring, message request/free and i-mode mail are not received at the calling and called sides, and are stored in the i-mode center instead. After remote monitoring ends, receive these message by "Check new message" (p.165 and p.166). However, you can receive SMS during remote monitoring.
 - You can keep the FOMA terminal stable for remote monitoring by placing a tripod on the desktop holder.

Ending remote monitor

1 Press [H].

The call duration appears, and then the remote monitor ends. Pressing [H] at the called side also ends the remote monitor.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you are seriously inconvenient to others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

● Phonebook

Phonebook Available with the FOMA Terminal	000
Storing an Entry in the Phonebook	000
Changing a Group Name	000
Distinguishing Incoming Calls for Each Phone Number and Group	000
Setting Up Phonebook Functions	000
Making a Call Using an Entry Stored in the Phonebook	000
Editing the Phonebook	000
Deleting an Entry in the Phonebook	000
Saving the Phonebook in the FOMA Card	000
Checking the Storage Status of the Phonebook	000
Making a Call with Minimum Button Operation	000

Phonebook Available with the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides the following two types of phonebooks: the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook to which various functions can be set and the FOMA card phonebook that can be used in any FOMA terminal. Use these phonebooks properly according to your applications.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card phonebooks

Stored entries

The stored entries in the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card are shown as follows:

Stored entries	FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook	FOMA card phonebook
Maximum number of phonebook entries ^{※1}	Maximum 700	50
Storing name	By family name and first name separately	By full name
Maximum number of groups ^{※2}	00-19	00-10
Storing phone number ^{※3}	Up to 4 phone numbers can be stored per phonebook entry, and up to 700 phone numbers in the phonebook. You can store a person's mobile phone number and office phone number, etc. as a single phonebook entry. You can select and store an icon from 24 icons such as "♂" and "♀" for phone numbers, so that categories such as "mobile phone number" and "office phone number" can be seen at a glance.	One phone number can be stored per phonebook entry. These icons cannot be selected. "23" is automatically stored.
Storing mail address	Up to 3 mail addresses can be stored per phonebook entry, and up to 700 mail addresses in the phonebook. You can store a person's home mail address and office mail address, etc. as a single phonebook entry. You can also select and store an icon from 5 icons such as "♂" and "♀" for mail addresses, so that categories such as "home mail address" and "office mail address" can be seen at a glance.	One mail address can be stored per phonebook entry. These icons cannot be selected. The icon "♂" is automatically stored.
Storing image	One still image and one movie can be stored per phonebook entry. Up to 100 still images and 100 movies can be stored in the phonebook.	—
Storing other data	One postal code, address and memo can be stored per phonebook entry. They can be stored as a single phonebook entry together with phone number and mail address, etc.	—

※1: The maximum number of the phonebook entries may be actually decreased depending on the stored content of each phonebook data.

※2: You can change a group name of "Group 01" - "Group 19" ("Group 01" - "Group 10" in the FOMA card phonebook). Assigning your favorite group name before storing is useful. → p.128

※3: You can enter 0-9, *, #, +, -, p in the phonebook. If you use a subaddress (p.150), enter #.

Characteristics of the phonebook of FOMA terminal (main unit)

If you register information into the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (terminal), you can use the following convenient functions:

- If you specify Memory Number "000" to "009", you can use the "Two-touch dial" in which you can make a phone call by pressing 2 buttons. → p.110
- You can use "Utilities" and "Group utilities" in which you can set the incoming and outgoing call settings by telephone number, by mail address and by group. → p.120
- You can use "Restrictions" to put restrictions on outgoing and incoming calls by telephone number. → p.141
- You can register a phonebook which you don't want other people to know as secret data in the "Secret Mode" and "Secret only mode". → p.201
- You can set the "Secret code". → p.127

Characteristics of Phonebook of FOMA card

Since data on the phonebook is registered in the FOMA card, you can use the same phonebook in another FOMA terminal by inserting the FOMA card into it. It is convenient if you want to use multiple FOMA terminals for different purposes.

Name display

Voice/Videophone calls

When a call comes in with the caller ID informed and the caller's name has already been stored in the phonebook, both the phone number and the name are displayed.



If a still image or movie is stored in the phonebook and the "Disp. PH-book" (p.151) setting is "ON", the still image or movie is also displayed.



The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialled calls" and "Redial".

I-mode mail/SMS

When an I-mode mail/SMS comes in and the sender's I-mode mail address/phone number has already been stored in the phonebook, the sender's name appears on the received mail list screen and details screens. If you send an I-mode mail/SMS to that party, his/her name also appears on the sent mail list screen and details screens.

In addition, the other party's name also appears on the "Received address" and "Sent address".

- When a phonebook entry is stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", only the caller/sender's phone number/mail address is displayed without the name.
- When "Restrict dialing" (p.141) is set, if the caller's phone number is not specified under the "Restrict dialing", only the phone number is displayed without the name.
- If the same phone number/mail address is stored in multiple phonebook entries with different names, the phonebook is searched by reading (p.116) and the name of the first displayed phonebook entry is displayed.

Storing an Entry in the Phonebook

- You must enter a "family name" or "first name". If no family name and no first name are entered, a phonebook entry cannot be stored in the phonebook.

Storing an entry in the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Add to phonebook".

2 Select "Phone".

3 Enter the family name.



Enter the family name using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
Up to 16 half-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the full name.
You can enter only the first name without entering the family name.
Entering characters → p.256

4 Check the reading of the entered family name.

If the reading is incorrect

Enter the correct reading using half-pitch katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the full name.
The "reading search of the "Search phonebook" (p.116) searches entries by using the combination of the family and first names' readings entered in this step.

5 Enter the first name.

Enter the first name in the same manner as the family name.
You can enter only the family name without entering the first name.

6 Check the reading of the entered first name.

If the reading is incorrect, correct it in the same manner as the reading of the family name.

7 Set the respective items.

- Group** : Select the group to be stored from "00" to "19". Group "00" is automatically stored if you do not select any group.
- Telephone number** : Enter a telephone number and select the icon. You can enter up to 26 digits (including "+").
After registering the first telephone number, "☎ Not stored" is displayed on the edit screen of the phonebook. If you select this item, you can register a new telephone number.
If you want to register the telephone number of a general telephone machine, be sure to enter the telephone number, starting with the area code even if your telephone number has the same area code.
- Mail address** : Enter a mail address and select the icon. You can enter up to 50 characters including half-pitch alphabetical characters, numbers and symbols.
If you register the first mail address, "✉ Not stored" is displayed on the edit screen of the phonebook. You can select this item to register a new mail address.
How to enter characters → p.256
- Address** : Enter a postal code and address. Enter 7 half-pitch numbers for the postal code. You can enter up to 46 half-pitch or 93 half-pitch characters including Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphabetical characters and numbers for the address.

- Memo** : Enter a memo. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters including Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphabetical characters and numbers.
- Still image** : Select a still image to be displayed for incoming calls from data stored in the "Image".
How to select a still image → p.294
- Movie** : Select a movie to be displayed for incoming calls from data stored in the "Movie".
How to select a movie → p.308
- Memory no.** : Memory number is assigned when you store an entry in the phonebook. You can also change the memory number to your favorite number between 000-699.

8 Press (Finish) to store a phonebook.

Two-touch dialling

If you assign phone numbers to the memory numbers "000" to "699", you can dial quickly those phone numbers by simply pressing two keys: one of , , and or () for a videophone call.



- If you enter "(full-pitch lower case character)" for the first or family name, "(half-pitch upper case character)" is displayed for reading. If you enter symbols and pictographs, entered characters are not reflected to readings. Characters entered with Kuten code are changed to spaces. However, when characters entered with Kuten code are also listed in a half-pitch character (katakana or alphabet), they are reflected to readings.
- If you enter the family name and the first name and press (Set) and then re-edit the family name and first name again, this change does not affect the reading.
- The phonebook stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed properly when you perform memory forwarding etc.
- Enter correct mail address correctly including a domain name.
Domain name is to the right of the @ (at mark) in a mail address.
(Example) docomo.tsp.△△△@docomo.ne.jp
You cannot use the following functions if the whole mail address including the domain name is entered incorrectly:
- Unlink and Group unlink → p.120
- Displaying the mail sender's name → p.150
- Automatically sorting received mail → p.203
- Mail with photo → p.151
- If a person's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store only the phone number for the mail address.
- If original data of still images and movies registered in the phonebook are updated and/or deleted, the still images and movies in the phonebook are also updated and/or deleted.
- To display the stored still image or movie for an incoming call, set the "Display phonebook image" (p.181) to "On".
- When a stored still image or movie exceeds the image display area in the phonebook default screen, the image or movie is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the still image or movie is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.
- When a call comes in from a phone number stored in the phonebook with a still image or movie, if the image or movie exceeds the image display area set for "Calling" in the "Display setting" (p.177), the image or movie is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the still image or movie is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.

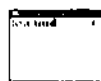
Storing an entry in the FOMA card phonebook

- You must enter "name". If no "name" entered, a phonebook entry cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Add to phonebook".

2 Select "UIM".

3 Enter a name.



Enter a name by using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be entered.
Entering characters → p.298

4 Check the readings of the entered name.

If the reading is incorrect

Enter the correct reading by using katakana (full-pitch only), alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Up to 12 full-pitch characters or 25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be entered.
The "reading search" of the "Search phonebook" (p.116) searches entries by using the readings of the name stored in this step.

5 Set the respective items.

- Group : Select a group to be stored from "00" to "10". "00" is automatically used if you do not select any group.
- Telephone number : Enter a telephone number. You can enter up to 20 digits for the blue FOMA card and up to 26 digits (including "+") for the green FOMA card.
To register the telephone number of a general telephone machine, be sure to enter the area code in front of the telephone number even if it has the same area code as yours.
- Mail address : Enter a mail address. You can enter up to 50 characters including half-pitch alphabetical characters, numbers and symbols.
Entering characters → p.298

6 Press (Finish) to store a phonebook.



- If you enter "2" (full-pitch lower case character) for the name, "2" (full-pitch upper case character) is displayed for reading. However, you can enter "2" (full-pitch lower case character) in reading input. If you enter symbols, entered characters are not reflected to readings. Characters entered by using Kuten code are changed to spaces. However, when characters entered with Kuten code are also listed in a half-pitch character (katakana or alphabet), they are reflected to readings.
- If you enter the family last name and the first name and press (Set), and then re-edit the family name and the first name again, this change does not affect the reading.
- The phonebook stored using symbols may not be displayed properly when you perform memory forwarding, etc.
- Enter a mail address including a domain name correctly. Domain name is a character string that follows @ (at mark).
(Example) docomo.tokyo.aaa@docomo.ne.jp
You cannot use the following functions if the mail address including the domain name is not entered correctly.
- Displaying the mail sender's name → p.150
- Automatically saving received mail → p.203
- Mail with photo → p.151
- If a person's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store only the phone number for the mail address.

Storing data in the phonebook from received/sent call/mail record

You can store phone numbers directly to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialled calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" or store a new phone number to the phonebook after dialling IL.

- To add new phone numbers/mail addresses to an existing entry in the phonebook, call up the entry and then you can add new data to it.

<Example: Adding a new phone number to the FOMA terminal (main unit) Phonebook from the "Received calls">

1 Display the Received calls screen for the phone number you want to store.



How to display the received calls → p.151

2 Select "Add to phonebook"->"Phone" from the function menu.

To store the phone number in the FOMA card
Select "UIM".

3 Select "Add", and search the phonebook entry where you will store the number.

How to search a phonebook → p.116

To store a phone number in a new phonebook entry

Select "New".

When storing in the FOMA card
Select "New" or "Overwrite".

4 Display the phonebook details screen, and then press (Select).



The phone number is automatically entered and the Edit phonebook Screen appears.
How to correct phonebook → p.119

5 When you finish editing, press (Finish).

When a message asking you whether to overwrite is displayed
Select "YES".



- The caller ID setting ("Notify"/"Not notify") displayed in the "Dialled calls" and "Redial" are not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses that cannot be used for return cannot be stored in the phonebook.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

When the "Alarm of battery exhaustion" rings or the tool group task is newly started by Multi task (p.265) during an edit of the phonebook, the editing of the phonebook is suspended. The phonebook that you are editing is automatically saved as temporary editing data. To restart the edit, call up the editing data.

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Add to phonebook".
- 2 Select "Phone" or "UIM".
- 3 Select "Recall".

You can resume editing the phonebook entry that was interrupted.
If you resume editing the phonebook entry and stop editing without storing the editing data, the data will be erased.

To store a new phonebook entry
Select "New".

- Only the most recent data is saved as the data being edited.
- When you receive a voice or videophone call during phonebook editing, you can answer the call while keeping the phonebook data as it is.
During a voice call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing  (MULTI) to open the task menu and select the item you were editing. Once the voice/videophone call ends, the phonebook edit screen you were at automatically reappears.

Important

- When you use the FOMA terminal for the first time after purchasing it, or if the FOMA terminal has been left for a month or more with no battery pack fitted or a run out battery pack fitted, you must recharge the internal backup battery. Charge the FOMA terminal with the battery pack fitted. This also charges the internal backup battery.
- It is recommended to take notes and/or use the miniSD memory card (p.371) to keep a backup copy of the data stored in the FOMA card. You can also save the data in a PC using the data link software (p.476) and a USB cable (optional).
- The FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook data will be retained for up to a month even if the battery pack is left removed from the terminal. However, the stored data may be lost if the FOMA terminal is left for longer periods with no power. The stored data may also be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced, or otherwise handled in a way that causes such data to be lost.
- "The first phone number", "Kana/Kanji full name", "Group setting", "The first mail address", "Bookmark" and "Secret setting" can be copied to the new terminal at a DoCoMo service counter. Please note that it may not be possible to copy data which is stored in the FOMA terminal, depending on specifications of the new terminals.
Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data such as the phonebook data in your FOMA terminal.
In addition, you can forward the content of the phonebook to a PC and keep it by using data link software (p.470).

Group setting

Changing a Group Name

Default setting	FOMA terminal (main unit): Group 01 to Group 19 FOMA card: Group 01 to Group 10
-----------------	--

You can separate the phonebooks by use. For example, you can group them by category like "Companies" and "Friends" or hobby like "Baseball" and "Pottery".
Groups whose names can be changed and maximum number of characters are as follows:

	Groups whose names can be changed	Maximum number of characters
FOMA terminal (main unit)	Group 01 to Group 19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters
FOMA card	Group 01 to Group 10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters

- You cannot change the group name "Group 00".
- You can set the "Utilities" functions for Group 01 to Group 19 in the FOMA terminal (main unit). — p.120

Changing a group name

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Group setting".
- 2 Select the group you want to change.



- 3 Enter a group name.

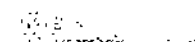


 is attached to the groups in the FOMA card.
If you assign the same group name to the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card, the group is displayed as different two groups.
Existing characters — p.298

Resetting a group name

Reset group names you have changed to their default settings.

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Group setting".
- 2 Highlight the group name to reset, and select "Reset group name" from the function menu.



- If you reset a group name, the "Utilities" setting set to the group is not canceled.

Distinguishing Incoming Calls for Each Phone Number and Group

Default setting All canceled

You can set a different ring tone or answer message of the record message for each phone number, mail address or group in the phonebook. It is useful when distinguishing the caller of an incoming call by only a ring tone.

You can set the following Utilities functions:

Purpose	Utilities	See page
To distinguish the callers of incoming calls by a ring tone, image, etc.	By a ring tone	Ring tone p.163
	By the flashing color of the incoming call lamp	Illumination p.165
	By an image	Image p.177
To set a different answer message for each phonebook entry when the record message is activated	Answer message	p.84
To distinguish the senders of incoming mail by a ring tone, etc.	By a ring tone	Mail ring tone p.163
	By the flashing color of the incoming call lamp	Mail Illumination p.165

❗ You must set the "Record message" (p.84) to "ON" beforehand.

- You can set these functions for all phone numbers, mail addresses and all groups except "Group 00" stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook.
- You cannot set these functions for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
- You cannot set these functions for the phonebook entries stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- When the caller restricts the phone number display, the Utilities are invalid. "Caller ID request" setting is use/ul. → p.284

Making Incoming/outgoing setting for each phone number or mail address

You can follow the same procedure to set the incoming/outgoing utilities to phone numbers and mail addresses stored in the phonebook.

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to set the Utilities functions.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook

Press to display the desired phone number.

2 Select "Utilities" from the function menu.

3 Select the functions you want to set, and set the contents of each functions.

"*" is attached to the function you have set.

To cancel the set function

Select the function with "/*".

The function is canceled and "*" disappears.

Utilities

When you set the Utilities functions

Icons to check the Utilities functions are displayed on a phonebook details screen.



- Indicates that "Ring tone" is set.
- Indicates that "Illumination" is set.
- Indicates that "Image" is set.
- Indicates that "Answer message" is set.
- Indicates that "Mail ring tone" is set.
- Indicates that "Mail illumination" is set.

- Note that the Utilities functions are canceled if you change a phone number or mail address.
- To change the Utilities functions you have set, first cancel the current settings.

Making Incoming/outgoing setting for each group

You can follow the same procedure to set the incoming/outgoing utilities to groups stored in the phonebook.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Group setting".

2 Highlight the group which you want to set, and select "Utilities" from the function menu.

3 Select the functions you want to set, and set the contents of each function.

"*" mark is attached to the function you have set.

To cancel the set function

Select the function with "/*".

The function is canceled and "*" disappears.

- If the same phone number or mail address has been stored in multiple groups, the priority is given to the settings specified for the group that contains the phone number or mail address found first in the line search order (p.116).
- You can set the Utilities functions for groups containing both phonebook entries (Secret data) stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" and ordinary phonebook entries and groups containing secret data only. However, note that these functions are disabled for incoming calls from callers stored as secret data.
- To change the items you have set, first cancel the current settings.

Operational priority when settings are overlapped

When the Utilities settings are overlapped with other function settings, or multiple mail or message request/free with different settings are received, the FOMA terminal operates as follows.

Movement of incoming call lamp if incoming call settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority.

- ① Illumination settings of the Utilities
- ② Illumination settings of the Group Utilities
- ③ Illumination settings

Movement of ring tone if ring tone settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority.

- ① The ring tone of the Utilities
- ② The ring tone of the Group Utilities
- ③ Select ring tone

Incoming call display if incoming call settings overlap

The priorities are as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an E-mail operates as a ring tone, the E-mail will appear.

- ① E-mail of the phonebook registration image
- ② The image of the Utilities
- ③ The image of the Group Utilities
- ④ The image of the phonebook registration image
- ⑤ Display settings

When receiving multiple mails or message requests/free simultaneously

	Ring tone/Illumination operations
Only multiple mail is received	Operate according to the conditions set for the last received mail.
Message requests and message free are received simultaneously	Operate according to the conditions set for message request.
Mail and message requests/free are received simultaneously	Operate according to the conditions set for the last received mail.

Checking the Utilities settings

You can check the phonebook entries and groups for which the "Utilities" functions are set, function by function. At the same time, you can also cancel each setting.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Utilities".

2 Select the function with "★".

The items of the function you selected are displayed. "★" appears on the items that are set in Utilities.

To cancel the settings of the function at once

Highlight the function with "★", and select "Release settings" from the function menu.

3 Select the item with "★".

The list screen listing the names of phonebook entries and groups for which the selected settings have been specified appears.

"★" is prefixed to the group names.

To cancel the settings of the function at once by item

Highlight the item with "★", and select "Release settings" from the function menu.

4 Check the phonebook entries and groups for which the Utilities function is set.

To display a phonebook entry details screen

Select the phonebook entry you want to display.

To cancel the Utilities function set for a phonebook entry

Select the phone number and mail address you want to cancel on the details screen.

To cancel the Utilities function set for a group

Select the group you want to cancel.

Setting Up Phonebook Functions

● Setting Notify/Not notify caller ID to a phonebook entry <Notify caller ID> ●

You can set whether to notify the other party of your caller ID or not every time you make a voice or videophone call.

- The setting of this function is not stored in the phonebook. You must make this setting for each voice or videophone call you make. If you omit this setting, the "Notify caller ID" service setting (p.283) applies.

1 Display the phonebook details screen you want to set.

How to search the phonebook — p.116

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook

Press  to display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set.

2 Select "Notify caller ID" from the function menu.

3 Select an item you want to set.

Not to notify the other party of your caller ID

Select "OFF".

"Not notify" appears.

When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted.

To notify the other party of your caller ID

Select "ON".

"Notify" appears.

When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted.

To cancel the Notify caller ID

Select "Cancel prefix".

When selecting a phone number prefixed with "186/184", "186/184" is deleted and the "Notify caller ID" service setting (p.283) appears.



- When you make a call with "Notify"/"Not notify" set, your phone number is stored in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" with the same "Notify"/"Not notify" attached.
- When you dial a phone number or display it from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial", you can also set Notify caller ID in the same way.

Setting the FOMA terminal to display a phone number by just unfolding <Automatic display>

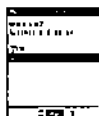
Default setting OFF

You can set up the FOMA terminal to automatically display a specified phone number when you unfold it. While the standby display is displayed, you can then call the displayed phone number by simply pressing **[CALL]**. When you do not call the number, press **[END]** or **[CALL]** to return to the standby screen.

- You can specify one phone number for the automatic display. No mail address can be specified.
- You cannot specify phone number for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
- You cannot specify phone number for the phonebook entries stored in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- The specified phone number is not displayed when you unfold the FOMA terminal while operating other functions or entering characters, or in the Secret only mode.
- You cannot select other phone numbers stored in the same phonebook entry during the automatic display.

Activating the automatic display

- 1 Select **[MENU]** (Menu) **[F1]** **[F2]** "Display" **[F1]** "Automatic display".



To display a specified phone number automatically
Select "ON".
To display no phone number automatically
Select "OFF".

Selecting a phone number to display automatically

- 1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set this function.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook
Press **[F1]** to display the desired phone number.

- 2 Select "Automatic disp." from the function menu.



"*" is attached to "Automatic display".
To cancel the automatic display
Select "Automatic disp. *" from the function menu.
The automatic display function is canceled, and "*" disappears.

● In the following cases, the Utilities settings are invalid.

- While PIN lock is set
- While ALL lock is set
- While Secret only mode is set
- While Restrict dialing is set
- During a talk

Setting a secret code in a mail address

To send i-mode mail to a recipient who has stored a secret code with his/her mail address (p.239), you must add the secret code to the mail address. If you have set a secret code with the recipient's mail address, the code is automatically added when you send a mail to that address.

- You can also set a secret code for a phone number to send i-mode mail to an i-mode terminal only by referring to its phone number.
- Secret codes are attached to mail addresses only when the destination mail address is a "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". For other kinds of mail addresses, secret codes cannot be added.
- You cannot set a secret code for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.

- 1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry for which you want to set a secret code.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

When multiple phone numbers or mail address are stored in a single phonebook
Press **[F1]** to display the desired phone number or mail address.

- 2 Select "Secret code" from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

Security code → p.192

- 3 Select "Set code".

To check the set secret code
Select "Check code".

To cancel the set secret code
Select "Release code".

- 4 Enter the 4-digit Secret code.



"0000" cannot be set.

Search phonebook

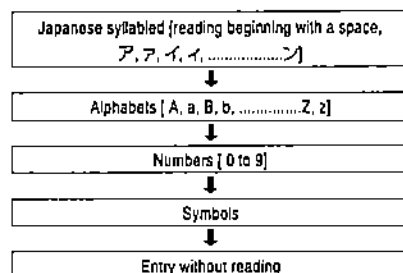
Making a Call Using an Entry Stored in the Phonebook

You can call up a phonebook entry by using any one of 7 search methods: reading, name, phone number, mail address, memory number, group and column of reading (Japanese syllabary: order of a, ka, sa, te and na).

- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are not displayed unless you set the FOMA terminal to the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- You can make a call from the called up phonebook.

Search result display

Except for memory number search, the phonebook entry is searched in the following order according to the reading entered when data is stored in the phonebook and the results are displayed.



1 Select [Menu] ► [F1] ► "Search phonebook".

You can display the phonebook search screen by pressing [F1] to select "Search phonebook" or pressing [F1].

2 Select the search method.



To display the search method with priority

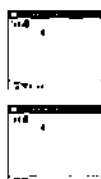
Highlight the search method you want to display with priority, and then press [Enter] (Prior).

When you press [Enter] while the standby display is displayed at the next search, the set search method screen is displayed.

To cancel the search method with priority

Highlight the search method with "*" and press [F1] (OFF).

3 Search the phonebook.



To search by reading

Enter part of the reading and then press [F1] or [F2].
Enter the reading from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not have to enter the entire reading you are searching for.
Entering characters → p. 298

To search by name

Enter part of the name and then press [F1] or [F2].
Enter the name from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not have to enter the entire reading you are searching for.



To search by phone number

Enter part of the phone number and then press [F1] or [F2].
You only need to enter a first few digits or part of the phone number to search the entry.
You can also search phonebook entries that include "*" by pressing [F1] for 1 second or more.



To search by mail address

Enter part of the mail address and then press [F1] or [F2].



To search by memory number

Enter the 3-digit memory number.
The FOMA card phonebook cannot be searched by memory number.



To search by group

Select the desired group.
Groups of the phonebook of the FOMA card are different from those of the phonebook of FOMA terminal (main unit).



To search by column (in the order of Japanese syllabary)

Press the key corresponding to the column you want to search.

- [F1] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ア (A)
- [F2] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of カ (Ka)
- [F3] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of サ (Sa)

- [F4] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of テ (Te)
- [F5] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ナ (Na)
- [F6] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ニ (Ni)
- [F7] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヒ (Hi)
- [F8] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of フ (Fu)
- [F9] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヘ (He)
- [F10] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ホ (Ho)
- [F11] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of マ (Ma)
- [F12] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ミ (Mi)
- [F13] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ム (Mu)
- [F14] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of メ (Me)
- [F15] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of モ (Mo)
- [F16] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヤ (Ya)
- [F17] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of リ (Ri)
- [F18] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ル (Ru)
- [F19] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of レ (Re)
- [F20] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ロ (Ro)
- [F21] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ワ (Wa)
- [F22] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F23] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F24] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F25] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F26] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F27] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F28] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F29] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F30] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F31] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F32] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F33] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F34] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F35] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F36] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F37] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F38] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F39] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F40] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F41] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F42] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F43] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F44] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F45] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F46] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F47] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F48] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F49] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F50] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F51] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F52] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F53] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F54] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F55] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F56] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F57] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F58] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F59] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F60] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F61] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F62] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F63] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F64] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F65] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F66] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F67] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F68] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F69] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F70] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F71] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F72] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F73] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F74] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F75] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F76] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F77] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F78] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F79] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F80] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F81] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F82] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F83] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F84] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F85] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F86] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F87] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F88] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F89] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F90] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F91] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F92] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F93] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F94] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F95] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F96] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F97] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F98] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)
- [F99] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヱ (E)
- [F100] Displays only entries whose reading begins with the line of ヲ (O)

When the search ends, a list of phonebooks that meet the searching conditions is displayed. "*" is displayed for the FOMA card phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

To display a list of all phonebooks registered

Press [F1] or [F2] without entering any searching conditions

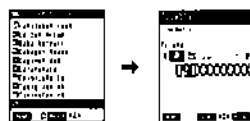
Please note that you cannot display a list of all phonebooks if the searching method is "Group search".

To make a call from List screen

Highlight the phonebook from which you want to make a call and press [F1] or [F2].

A voice call will be made if you press [F1], and a videophone call will be made if you press [F2], if multiple telephone numbers are registered in the highlighted phonebook, the telephone number on the top of the list will be called.

4 Select the desired phonebook entry.



The details screen of a phonebook is displayed.
If multiple telephone numbers are registered in the same phonebook.
If you press , you can switch the telephone number display.
To make a call from the details screen of the phonebook.
Display the telephone number to call and press  or .
A voice call will be made if you press , and a videophone call will if .

NOTE

- If you do not set the search method with priority, the phonebook search screen appears when you press , and the search method selected last will be highlighted.

Editing the Phonebook

Follow the procedure below to edit entries in the phonebook.
You can store an edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to edit, and then press [Edit].

How to search the phonebook -- p.116

2 Edit the respective items.

Edit the items you need to change in the same operation as described for "Add to phonebook".
How to add to phonebook -- p.108

To store the edited entry under a new memory number.
Select "Ma" and enter the unused memory number (000 to 699).

The original entry remains unchanged, and the edited entry is stored under a different memory number.

3 When you finish editing, press [Finish] and select "YES".

To store the edited entry in the FOMA card phonebook.

Press  [Finish] and select "Overwrite"/"Add".

If you select "Overwrite", the existing entry is overwritten with the edited data.

If you select "Add", the original entry remains unchanged, and the edited entry is stored as a new entry.

- You cannot modify the phonebook when "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can only modify the phonebook of secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Deleting an Entry in the Phonebook

Follow the procedure below to delete an entry stored in the phonebook. You can also select and delete only a phone number, mail address, address, memo, still image or movie from an entry.

1 Display the details screen for the phonebook entry you want to delete.

How to search the phonebook -- p.116

To delete only a phone number, mail address, address, memo, still image or movie.

Press  to display the item you want to delete.

2 Select "Delete data" from the function menu.

To delete an phonebook entry.

Select "This phonebook".

To delete only item displayed in Step 1.

Select "Phone No./Mail address/Address/Memorandum/Delete image/Delete movie" according to the item to be erased or deleted.

- You cannot delete the phonebook data when "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can only modify the phonebook data of secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

UIM operation

Saving the Phonebook in the FOMA Card

Data in the phonebook and SMS can be transferred between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card. You can also delete data in the phonebook and SMS stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card.

- During data copying or deleting, you cannot make or receive a voice/videophone call, or send or receive mail. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- Even in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied or deleted with this function.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the phonebook of the FOMA card. For items and the total number of stored items that can be copied, see p.106.

● Copying data between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card ●

Follow the procedure below to copy data in the phonebook and SMS between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card.

- Original data in the FOMA terminal (main unit) or the FOMA card remains after data copying.
- This function is not available when the FOMA card is not inserted.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "UIM operation", and then enter the security code.

After the security code is entered, the terminal's communication function such as receiving a call is disabled and the  icon appears.

If you receive a communication such as an incoming call before the security code is entered, the UIM operation ends.

Security code -- p.192

2 Select "Copy".**3** Select the direction in which the data is copied.

To copy data stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card
Select "Phone → UIM".

To copy data stored in the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit)
Select "UIM → Phone".

4 Select the data type you want to copy.

To copy phonebook data

Select "Phonebook".

Search the phonebook, and then display the phonebook list screen.

How to search phonebook → p.116

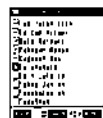
To copy SMS data

Select "SMS".

Select "Inbox" or "Outbox", and then display the SMS list screen.

5 Select the data to copy, and then press [Finish].

A message is displayed asking you whether to copy the data.

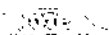


Phonebook

6 Select "YES".

When you do not copy the data

Select "No".



- When there is data that cannot be copied, when the digits of a phone number is not compatible with the FOMA card, or when "+" is not entered properly, a message is displayed asking you whether to copy that data.
- If the stored (saved) entries exceed the maximum number in the destination phonebook while copying, a message is displayed informing you that the maximum data capacity has been reached at the destination. Delete unnecessary entries among the stored (saved) data, and retry copying the entries that were not copied successfully.
- The number of phone numbers or mail addresses that can be stored as a single phonebook entry differs between the FOMA terminal (main unit) and the FOMA card. Therefore, the phone numbers or mail addresses stored as the second or subsequent ones in the FOMA terminal (main unit) phonebook cannot be copied to the FOMA card. Only the first phone number or mail address is copied and "☎" or "✉" icon appear.
- Since character types available with the FOMA terminal (main unit) and that with the FOMA card differ, some characters may be converted to spaces or different characters as follows.
 - When you copy the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card, pictographs will be converted to spaces.
 - When you copy the SMS of the FOMA terminal (main unit) to the FOMA card, the pictographs other than ♥ and ☺ will be converted to spaces.
 - When you copy the phonebook of the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (main unit), "P" (half-pitch/lower case character) will be converted to "J" (half-pitch/upper case character).
- When copying the FOMA card data that was stored using another FOMA terminal, the following characters are converted to spaces: the Latin and Greek characters and some symbols that are not half-pitch alphanumeric characters (excluding "[", "]", "-", and full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten code list).
- You cannot copy only SMS reports (p.194). However, when the SMS report of a sent SMS is in the Inbox, if this sent SMS is copied, the SMS report saved in the sent SMS can also be copied.
- Display the phonebook details screen, and select "Copy to UIM" (or "Copy from UIM" when copying from the FOMA card) from the function menu to copy one entry at a time.
- Display the SMS details screen or highlight an SMS to copy on the SMS list screen, and select "UIM operation" from the function menu to transfer or copy one SMS at a time. → p.215

Deleting data in the phonebook and SMS

Follow the procedure below to delete data stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "UIM operation", and then enter the security code.

About security code → p.193

2 Select "Delete".**3** Select the destination in which you want to save the deleted data.

To delete the data in the FOMA terminal (phone)

Select "Phone".

To delete the data in a FOMA card

Select "UIM".

4 Select the data type to delete.

To delete phonebook data

Select "Phonebook".

Search the phonebook, and then display the phonebook list screen.

How to search phonebook → p.116

To delete SMS data

Select "SMS".

Select "Inbox" or "Outbox", and then display the SMS list screen.

5 Select the data to delete, and then press [Finish].

A message is displayed asking whether to delete the data.



6 Select "YES".

When you do not delete the data, select "NO".

Checking the Storage Status of the Phonebook

You can check the storage status of the phonebook such as the total number of entries stored and the remaining number of entries that can be stored.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "No. of phonebook".



Phone (Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal)

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored.
Number of stored entries/700 (Maximum number of entries that can be stored)

Secret : Displays the number of entries stored as secret data. Displayed only in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Image : Displays the number of images stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored images/100 (Maximum number of images that can be stored)

Movies : Displays the number of movies stored in the phonebook.
Number of stored movies/100 (Maximum number of movies that can be stored)

Mail  : Indicates the remaining number of phone numbers that can be stored.
 : Indicates the remaining number of mail addresses that can be stored.

UIM (Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card)

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored.
Number of stored entries/50 (Maximum number of entries that can be stored)

● The number of entries stored in the Phone (FOMA terminal) phonebook include the number of secret data entries.

Two-touch dialing

Making a Call with Minimum Button Operation

If you assign phone numbers to the memory numbers "000" to "009", you can dial quickly those phone numbers by simply pressing two keys: one of  to , and  or  [Dial] ( for a videophone call)

1 Press the key between  and  that corresponds to the memory number.

2 Press  or  [Dial]

A call is made to the phone number that is registered to the memory number.

To make a videophone call

Press .

● Sound and Display Settings

■ Sound Settings

Selecting a Ring Tone for Incoming Calls and Mail	000
Using Vibration to Notify You Incoming Calls and Alarm	000
Recording/Playing an Alarm or Hold Tone	000
Turning Off the Keypad Sound	000
Setting the FOMA Terminal to Emit the Charge Sound	000
Setting Alarm Notification of a Bad Connection	000
Setting Mail Ring Time	000
Setting for Sounding Only from the Earphone <Optional>	000
Turning Off Sounds Emitted by the FOMA Terminal	000
Changing the Manner Mode Setting	000

■ Display Settings

Using the Desktop Icons	000
Displaying Your Favorite Image on the Screen	000
Setting the Display of Images Stored in the Phonebook	000
Setting the Setting Whether to Turn On/Off the Display Light for the Display and Keys	000
Selecting the Display Colors	000
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash at Incoming Call	000
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash During a Call	000
Changing the Font Settings	000
Setting the Clock Display	000

Selecting a Ring Tone for Incoming Calls and Mail

Default setting	Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Msg. Request: Pattern 3 Msg. Free: Pattern 3
-----------------	---

You can set a different ring tone for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mail, Msg. Request and Msg. Free. You can also set each different ring tone for calls/mail from a specified phone number/mail address/group in the phonebook.

→ p.120

- You can set i-motion downloaded from a site or Web page to the ring tone.
- You cannot set "i-motion" for mail and Msg. Request/Free.
- To set "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2", you must first record your message with the "Voice announce".
- While "PIM lock" is set, data other than pre-installed patterns, sound effects and melodies cannot be set. You cannot set your ring tone to a movie ring tone either while "PIM lock" is set.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Incoming call" ► "Select ring tone".

2 Select the item for which you want to set a ring tone.

- Phone : Sets a ring tone for voice calls
- Video-phone Mail : Sets a ring tone for videophone calls
- Video-phone Mail : Sets a ring tone for i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication
- Msg. Request : Sets a ring tone for Msg. Request
- Msg. Free : Sets a ring tone for Msg. Free

3 Select a ring tone category.

- Melody : Select from the 3 preset patterns, 8 sound effects, and 10 melodies in "Pre-installed" folder or a maximum of 160 melodies downloaded from sites and Internet websites located in the "HBOX" or your original folder.
- i-motion : Select an i-motion downloaded into the FOMA terminal from the "Info" or your original folder. When a call comes in, sounds and images are played in accordance with the selected i-motion (movie ringtone function). About the movie ringtone function → p.95
- Voice announce : Select a ring tone from "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded with the "Voice announce" (p.247) function. When a call comes in, your recorded voice plays.
- Random melody : Select a folder in which melodies are saved. When a call comes in, the stored melodies are randomly selected and played.
- OFF : No ring tone sounds.

4 Select a melody to be set as a ring tone.

- Highlight the melody to play the melody. Press any button of or to stop.
- When selecting i-motion
Press (Play) to play the selected i-motion.

Select ring tone

Pre-installed ring tone/melody list

Display
Pattern 1-3
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Melody 9
Melody 10
Alarm 1
Alarm 2
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
Alarm 6
Alarm 7
Alarm 8

License No. X000000000

© 2003 FUJITSU

- You can only set the preset ring tone while the "PIM Lock" is set.
- When you receive a call during "PIM lock", if the ring tone is set to data or file other than pre-installed ring tones, the ring tone of the default setting sounds.
- When the vibration pattern is set to "Melody linkage" in "Vibrator" (p.167), if a melody with vibration pattern specified is set to the ring tone, the FOMA terminal vibrates in accordance with the pattern of the melody. However, a movie ring tone does not vibrate in accordance with the illumination.
- When the flashing pattern is set to "Melody linkage" in "Illumination" (p.165), if a melody with illumination pattern specified is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in accordance with the pattern of the melody.
- If "Ring tone" is set in "Melody", the same setting applies to "Ring tone" of the "Select ring tone". → p.333
- If "Ring tone" for "Phone" and "Video-phone" are set in "i-Motion", the same setting applies to "Phone" and "Video-phone" of the "Select ring tone". → p.321
- When data or a file with the "FOMA card operational restriction function" (p.83) set is set to the ring tone, if you remove the FOMA card or replace it with another one, the ring tone setting is reset to the default setting (The settings will not change, so if you put the FOMA card back in, your set ring tone will play again).
- The ring volume that sounds during ring tone selection for calls or mail messages is the same volume as set in the "Ring volume" (p.75) for "Phone/Video-phone" or "Mail/Message". If the "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", no ring tone sounds.
- The play part may have already been specified in the melodies with " / " or " \ ". If it is set to a ring tone, etc. only the specified part will be played.
- The i-motion unavailable for a ring tone is grayed out.
- If you set i-motion having an image and sound to the ring tone, an image set in "Display" setting is not displayed but the i-motion image is displayed.
- The ring tone for voice calls with no caller ID, you can set it in the "Call setting w/o ID" (p.145). The ring tone for the videophone call with no caller ID is subject to the "Video-phone" setting of this function.
- When the functions of the mail ring tone are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows. ① has the highest priority.
 - ① The mail ring tone of the Utilities
 - ② The mail ring tone of the Group Utilities
 - ③ The mail ring tone of the Select ring tone

Vibrator

Using Vibration to Notify You Incoming Calls and Alarm

Default setting: OFF

You can set each vibration pattern for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mails, Msg. Request and Msg. Free.

- When the manner mode is set to "Original" and the vibrator in the "Original" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

- Select (Menu) > > "Incoming call" > "Vibrator".
- Select the item for which you want to set the vibrator.
- Select the vibration pattern.

Highlight the vibration pattern. The FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.

Pattern 1 to 3 : The FOMA terminal vibrates in a specific pattern.

Melody linkage : The FOMA terminal vibrates in accordance with the pattern of the melody set to the ring tone.

However, if no vibration pattern is set to the melody or melody is set to the ring tone, the terminal vibrates in Pattern 2.

OFF : The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

The icon at the standby display indicates the items where the vibrator is set.

: Indicates that the vibrator is set to a voice call and video-phone.

: Indicates that the vibrator is set to mail.

: Indicates that the vibrator is set to a voice call, video-phone and mail.

Vibrator settings for Msg. Request/Free cannot be confirmed with icons.

NOTES

- When "Mail/Msg. ring tone" (p.233) is set to "OFF", no appears and the FOMA terminal does not vibrate for incoming Msg. Request/Free.
- When the sound effect of the flash image emits, even if the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- If you have set the vibrator to ON, be careful that the FOMA terminal will not approach fire (e.g. a heater) or fall from a desk due to vibration for incoming calls.

Voice announce

Recording/Playing an Alarm or Hold Tone

You can record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can record 2 voice messages: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- The maximum recording time is about 15 seconds.
- You can set your voice messages recorded with this function for the following functions:
 - Ring tone
 - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer message for Record message
 - Alarm tone for Alarm clock
 - Alarm tone for Schedule
 - Alarm tone for ToDo

※ "Melody" can also play recorded voice. → p.333

Recording voice data

- Select (Menu) > > "Voice announce".
- Select the item you want to record.
- Select "Record" to start recording your voice.

A short beep sounds and recording starts. Talk to the microphone. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends.

When recording ends, a short double beep "pipi" sounds, "Recording" disappears and the previous display reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press (Stop), or .

If you press during recording, the standby display reappears, but the recorded voice is saved.

NOTE

- When there is recorded voice data, a message notifying you that the voice data has already been recorded appears. If you select "YES" and record new voice data, the existing voice data is overwritten.
- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo", or you use other functions during recording, the recording stops.

Playing recorded voice data

- Select (Menu) > > "Voice announce".
- Select the item you want to play.
- Select "Play" to start playing voice data.

To cancel the playing after it has started

Press (Stop), or .

To delete voice data

Select "Erase".

To set whether to emit the start tone before alarm notification

Select "Set start tone".

Specify whether or not to emit (ON/OFF) the start tone before alarm notification.

If "ON" is set, "W" is displayed and a short double beep "pipi" sounds before the recorded voice plays as an alarm tone for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo".

NOTE

- If you delete the voice data set to the ring tone, alarm tone, answer message or hold tone, the setting of each function returns to the default setting. In case of "Melody", the program editing data will be deleted.

Keypad sound

Turning Off the Keypad Sound

Default setting ON

You can mute the keypad sound when the key is pressed to avoid disturbing other people around you.

- When the Keypad sound function is set to "OFF", the following tones will not sound:
 - Various alarm tones
 - Battery level indication tone
 - Volume adjustment startup tone
 - Snooze cancel tone for Alarm clock
- Regardless of this function setting, the following operations play the keypad sound:
 - When you press (Memo/Check) with the FOMA terminal folded
 - When you take a picture/movie with the camera
 - When the low-battery alarm sounds
 - When the messages are played/ended (through the earpiece speaker)
 - When you start/stop recording a voice memo during standby (through the earpiece speaker)
 - When you start/stop recording your message with the Voice announce function (through the earpiece speaker)
- The volume of the keypad sound will not change, regardless of the settings made at "Ring volume".

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Other settings" ► "Keypad sound".

To sound the keypad sound
Select "ON".

To turn the keypad sound off
Select "OFF".

Charge sound

Setting the FOMA Terminal to Emit the Charge Sound

Default setting ON

To avoid leaving the FOMA terminal with the power charged, you can set it to emit the charge sound "pipipi" when charging starts and ends.

- Regardless of this function setting, the FOMA terminal does not emit the charge sound during the following situations:
 - When a screen other than the standby display is displayed
 - While the driving mode is set
 - While the power mode is set
 - When the power is off
- While the "Phone/Video-phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent"

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Other settings" ► "Charge sound".

To emit the charge sound
Select "ON".

To turn the charge sound off
Select "OFF".

Quality alarm

Setting Alarm Notification of a Bad Connection

Default setting High tone

The FOMA terminal notifies you with an alarm tone immediately before a call is to be disconnected due to an exceedingly weak radio wave while you are talking on the voice call. It is useful for taking appropriate countermeasures such as moving to a place where radio wave conditions is good or ending the call and redialing with the other party's permission before the call is disconnected.

- If radio wave condition suddenly becomes bad, a call may be disconnected with no alarm.
- This function does not work with a videophone call.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Talk" ► "Quality alarm".

Not to sound an alarm

Select "No tone".

To sound a high-tone alarm

Select "High tone".

To sound a low-tone alarm

Select "Low tone".

Mail/Msg. ring time

Setting Mail Ring Time

Default setting 3 seconds

You can choose whether to set off ring tone when you receive mail or Msg. Request/Free (ON/OFF). If you choose ON, select length of time.

<Example: To set ring tone>

1 (Menu) ► ► "Incoming call" ► "Mail/Msg. ring time".

Current settings of Mail/Msg. ring time screen will be displayed.

2 Select the item and then select "ON".

To turn off ring tone

Select "OFF".

When the ring tone is set to "OFF", no ring tone, vibrator, blinking of multi-function keys or backlight is used for notifying you of mail or Msg. Request/Free reception. When the ring tone for mails is set to "OFF", "S" or "S2" is displayed on the screen. When the ring tone or Msg. Request/Free is set to "OFF", those icons are not displayed.

To finish or cancel the setup

Press .

3 Enter length of ring time (01-30 seconds).



Use 2 digits to enter the length of time. For example, if you want to enter 11 to 9 seconds, press first and then press the number . If you enter a number other than 01 through 30, a message appears to inform you that the number is not acceptable.

Earphone

Setting for Sounding Only from the Earphone <Optional>

Default setting Earphone+Speaker

You can mute the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. is connected by "Earphone".

- Even if you mute the speaker, both the earphone and the speaker emit the sound after a ring tone or an alarm tone for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" continue to sound for twenty seconds.
- Regardless of the FOMA terminal setting, the ring tone of the remote monitor and the shutter sound of the camera will be out of the speaker.
- When the earphone/microphone is connected, the speaker does not emit the sound even if you switched to the handsfree mode regardless of this function setting.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "External option" ► "Earphone".

To hear the sound from both the earphone and the speaker
Select "Earphone+Speaker".

To hear the sound only from the earphone
Select "Earphone".

- Even if this function is set to "Earphone", the sound emits from the speaker when the earphone/microphone is not connected.
- When this function is set to "Earphone+Speaker", if the earphone/microphone is inserted and extracted repeatedly, the quality of the sound emitted from the speaker may be changed.

Manner mode

Turning Off Sounds Emitted by the FOMA Terminal

Manner mode provides a quick and convenient way of muting the FOMA terminal's ring tones and keypad sound to avoid disturbing people around you.

- Regardless of the manner mode setting, the shutter sound for taking a still image, the starting/ending sounds for recording movie and the self-timer starting sound are emitted.
- In the manner mode, vibration is used in place of the following sounds:
 - Ring tone
 - Alarm tones for Alarm clock, Schedule and ToDo
 - Missed calls Tone/New mail tone when the FOMA terminal is folded.
 - If the FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern specified in the "Vibrator" (p.167) setting. If the "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".
- You can select any of the following 3 types of manner mode operation from the "Manner mode set": "Manner mode", "Super silent" and "Original". → p.136
- If the manner mode operation is set to "Original", the settings determine whether the alarm or tone sounds.

1 Hold down for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed or during a call.

12:05

The manner mode is set and "CP" appears.
While taking, a short double beep "pipp" sounds and a message is displayed notifying you that the manner mode is set.
While the manner mode is set, "CP" appears. In addition, the contents you have set in the "Manner mode set" also appears.

V₁, V₂, V₃ : Indicates that the "Vibrator" (p.167) notifies you of an incoming call.

S₁, S₂, S₃ : Indicates that the "Ring volume" (p.79) has been set to "Silent".

R₁, R₂ : Indicates that the "Record message" (p.84) has been set to "ON". The number indicates the number of messages recorded.

To cancel the manner mode
With the manner mode set, hold down for 1 second or more while the standby display is displayed or during a call.
Manner Mode is canceled and "CP" disappears.
While taking, a short double beep "pipp" sounds and a message is displayed notifying you that the manner mode is canceled.

Manner mode set

Changing the Manner Mode Setting

Default setting Manner mode

You can select the FOMA terminal operation of when the manner mode is set.

- The default setting for "Original" is as follows:

• Record message : OFF	• Vibrator : ON	• Phone vol. : Silent
• Mail vol. : Silent	• Alarm vol. : Silent	• VM tone : ON
• Keypad sound : OFF	• Mic sensitivity : Up	• LVA tone : OFF

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Incoming call" ► "Manner mode set".

2 Select the item you want to set.

- Proceed to step 3 when "Original" is selected.
- Manner mode : Mutes all sounds emitted through the FOMA terminal's speaker. The ring tone and other tones are notified with the vibrator (vibration). However, confirmation tones (when you press in the Voice memo or Play/Erase msg.) emitted through the earpiece speaker are not muted.
 - Super silent : Mutes all sounds emitted through the FOMA terminal's speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker. The ring tone and other tones are notified with the vibrator (vibration).
 - Original : You can customize the way the FOMA terminal operates in the manner mode. For example, you can specify in advance how the terminal responds to incoming calls in the manner mode and the alarm volume for the alarm clock.

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Record msg.	Specify whether the record message function activates (ON/OFF) when a call comes in. Record message → p.84
Vibrator	Specify whether to use the vibrator (ON/OFF) to notify you of incoming calls or alarms. Vibrator → p.157
Phone vol.	Set the ring volume for incoming voice/videophone calls. Ring volume → p.79
Mail vol.	Set the ring volume for incoming mail or message request/free. Ring volume → p.79
Alarm vol.	Set the alarm volume for the alarm clock. Alarm clock → p.214
VM tone	Specify whether to mute confirmation tones (ON/OFF) for the "Record message" and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Specify whether to mute the keypad sound (ON/OFF).
Mic sensitiv.	Specify whether to increase (Up/Normal) the sensitivity of the front mike during a call.
LVA tone	Specify whether to mute the Low-voltage alarm (ON/OFF).

4 Press [Finish] and set the original manner.

In the manner mode
Each manner mode is set as follows.

	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (Liste setting items in the Original)
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		Setting value of "LVA tone". Even when this is set to "ON", the Low-voltage alarm does not sound if the "Phone vol." in this function is set to "Silent".
Front mike sensitivity during a call ¹⁾	Up		Setting value of "Mic sensitiv."
Ring volume for voice and videophone calls	Silent		Setting value of "Phone vol."
Ring volume for mail and message request/free	Silent		Setting value of "Mail vol."
Vibrator	ON		Setting value of "Vibrator"
Held tone during a call or on hold	OFF		Setting value of "Phone vol." If this is set to other than "Silent", the tone sounds little.
Activating record message	OFF		Setting value of "Record msg."
Mixed calls tone/New mail tone when the FOMA terminal is folded	OFF		Setting value of "Phone vol." If this is set to "Stop", the tones sound at a constant volume.
Keypad sound	OFF		Setting value of "Keypad sound"
Alarm tone for alarm clock	Silent		Setting value of "Alarm vol."
Alarm tone for schedule/ToDo	Silent		Setting value of "Phone vol."
Starting/ending sounds for voice memo or record message	ON	OFF	Setting value of "VM tone"

¹⁾ : When the Mic sensitiv. is set to Up, your voice can be heard clearly by the other party even when you speak quietly during a call. However, when filming movies with the "Camera", set the mike sensitivity to "Normal".

- When you have set the vibrator notification for events that occurred in the Manner mode, be careful that the incoming call vibration does not cause the FOMA terminal to move near a flame (e.g. a heater) or fall from a desk by accident.

Using the Desktop Icons

You can paste a phone number or function frequently used as a desktop icon on the standby display. The desktop icons allow you to display a phone number or call up a function with a quick operation.

- The icons you can paste on the desktop are as follows:
 - Phone number, Mail address, URL, Melody, Image, Movie, I-motion, Chara-den and I-uppi software
 - Camera, ToDo list screen, Bar code reader, Dictionary and each function in the Original menu
- You can paste up to 15 desktop icons.
- You cannot paste a melody or image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal or an original animation on the desktop.

Pasting desktop icons

<Example: Pasting phone numbers in the phonebook>

1 Display the phone number you want to set.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

When multiple phone numbers are stored in a single phonebook

Press  to display the desired phone number.

When pasting a phone number from the "Received calls", "Dialled calls" or "Redial"

Highlight the phone number you want to display on the list screen or display the detailed screen.

2 Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu.

A message is displayed asking you whether to paste the desktop icon.

3 Select "YES".



- You cannot paste a phone number from a phonebook which is stored as a secret data.
- You cannot paste a phone number, mail address, URL, image, movie or I-motion saved in the miniSD memory card as a desktop icon.
- During "PIN lock", you cannot check the details of a desktop icon, edit a title, delete a desktop icon or reset a desktop.

Pasting other desktop icons

Mail address

To paste the mail address in the phonebook

Display the details screen of the mail address you want to paste.

To paste the received mail sender or sent mail destination

Display the mail details screen of the received mail sender or sent mail destination you want to paste.

The sender's address with "E-mail" cannot be pasted.

To paste the mail address in the received address list or sent address list

Highlight the mail address you want to paste on the list screen.

SMS address (phone number)

To paste the received SMS sender or sent SMS destination

Display the mail details screen of the received mail sender or sent mail destination you want to paste.

To paste the SMS address in the received address list or sent address list

Highlight the SMS address you want to paste on the list screen.

SMS address cannot be pasted from a phonebook.

URL

To paste a URL of a site

Display the URL you want to paste.

To paste a bookmark URL

Highlight the title you want to paste on the bookmark list screen.

To paste a URL in the URL history

Highlight the URL you want to paste on the URL history screen.

Up to 256 characters can be pasted for one URL.

If the URL of a site that contains images or melodies is pasted, it may not be possible to display this site from the desktop icon.

Image, movie, i-motion melody and Chara-den data

Highlight the melody you want to paste on the "Melody" list screen.

Highlight the image you want to paste on the "Image" list screen.

Highlight the movie or i-motion you want to paste on the "i-Motion" list screen.

Highlight the Chara-den you want to paste on the "Chara-den" list screen.

i-cuppli software

Highlight the software you want to paste on the software list screen.

"Camera" function

Display the camera menu screen.

"ToDo" list

Display the "ToDo" list screen.

"Bar code reader" function

Display the "Bar code reader" list screen.

"Dictionary" function

Display the "Dictionary" list screen.

"Original menu"

Display the "Original menu" addition screen.

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu.

Title of pasted desktop icons

Icon displayed	Type	Title
	Phone number	Name stored in phonebook (if not, phone number)
	Mail address	Name stored in phonebook (if not, mail address)
	SMS address	Name stored in phonebook (if not, phone number)
	URL	Page title (if not, URL without "http://" or "https://" is displayed)
	Melody	Melody title (if not, "Melody")
	Image	Image file name (if not, "Image")
	Movie or i-motion	Movie or i-motion title (if not, "i-motion")
	Chara-den	Chara-den title (if not, "Chara-den")
	i-cuppli software	Software name
	Camera	Each function name
	ToDo	
	Bar-code reader	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

* When a desktop icon is selected, the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters will be displayed for the title.

Calling up the data or function from desktop icons

- Press while the standby display is displayed.
- Position the cursor over the desktop icon you want to use.

The desktop icon title at the cursor point is displayed. If there are more than 6 desktop icons stored, you will see ">" on both sides of the display. Press to scroll across the desktop icons.
- Press [Select].
 - : The dialed other party's phone number that is pasted is displayed. Press or to make a voice call or videophone call.
 - : The New mail composing screen is displayed with the pasted mail address entered. —p.152
 - : The New SMS composing screen is displayed with the pasted SMS address (phone number) entered. —p.192
 - : The page is displayed by connecting to that pasted URL site. —p.42
 - : The pasted melody is played with the "Melody". —p.333
 - : The pasted image is displayed with the "Image". —p.294
 - : The pasted movie or i-motion is played with the "i-Motion". —p.308
 - : The pasted Chara-den is played with the "Chara-den". —p.325
 - : The pasted i-cuppli software started. —p.73
 - : The "Camera" is started. —p.246

- : The "ToDo" list screen is displayed. → p.226
- : The "Barcode reader" is started. → p.281
- : The "Dictionary" is started. → p.300
- : The "Original menu" is displayed. → p.242

- When "PIN Lock" is on, you will see no desktop icon for phone number, mail addresses, SMS addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies or k-motions, Characters, or i-ripple. Cancel "PIN lock" to bring them back.
- The pasted data can only be played or displayed from the melody, image, movie, k-motion, Characters or i-ripple desktop icons.
- If you paste data, such as a melody or image, as a desktop icon and delete the original data, you cannot also call it up from the desktop icon.

Checking the Information of a desktop icon

You can check information such as the detail and title you have pasted on the desktop icons.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Desktop icon".
- 2 Select the desktop icon title you want to check.



- On the desktop icon details screen, press to scroll the screen and check all the URL.

Changing the title of a desktop icon

You can change the title you have pasted on the desktop icons.

- Your title can be up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. However, the title that will be displayed when you select the desktop icon will only be up to the first 11 full-pitch characters or 22 half-pitch characters.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Desktop icon".
- 2 Highlight the title you want to change and select "Edit title" from the function menu.
- 3 Change the title.
Entering characters → p.298



- Even if the desktop icon title is changed, the title of the pasted original data remains unchanged. Moreover, even if the original data title is changed, the desktop icon title remains unchanged.

Deleting a desktop icon pasted on the standby screen

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Desktop icon".
- 2 Highlight the desktop icon you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

When you want to delete all
Select "Delete all".

Resetting the desktop icons to the default setting <Reset desktop>

You can delete all the desktop icons other than the camera desktop icon, which is included at the time of purchase.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Desktop icon".
- 2 Select "Reset desktop" from the function menu.

Information notified by the desktop icons

A desktop icon appears to notify you of information such as an incoming new mail. You can make an access to the related function with the same operation as a pasted desktop icon.

Icon	Information	What is displayed/started after operation	See page
New	Notifies you that there is a new mail.	The received mail list screen in the Inbox containing the latest mail will appear.	p.177
Missed	Notifies you that there is a missed call.	The "Missed calls" will appear.	p.151
MSG	Notifies you that there is a recorded message.	The "Play/Erase msg." will be started.	p.245
VM	Notifies you that there is a voice mail stored in the voice mail service center.	The "Voice mail" will be started.	p.271
Missed	Notifies you that there is a missed alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or ToDo.	The latest missed alarm information will appear.	p.212
SW	Notifies you that an i-ripple software could not automatically startup.	The Auto start info screen will appear.	p.80
RPU	Notifies you that i-ripple standby screen was abnormally ended.	The Security error record will appear.	p.91
SW	Notifies you that the "Software update" has completed.	After entering the PIN code, the update result display screen will appear.	p.376

- Even when the "PIM" is not displayed, you may have some messages left in the Voice Mail Service Center.
- Selecting  displays the 'Missed calls' record and an icon shows whether it was a voice call or a videophone call that you missed.
For details about the icons displayed in the missed calls record, → p.153
- When the "PIM lock" is set while , , , , , ,  are displayed, these desktop icons disappear, but the icons will reappear after canceling the "PIM lock".
If you receive a mail during PIM lock,  will appear after canceling the PIM lock.
- To delete a desktop icon notifying information, hold down  for 1 second or more. (This clears only the icon but the contents are not deleted.)
- The desktop icons notifying information are not deleted even though the power is turned off, but deleted when the battery pack is removed.
- If you access from each desktop icon to each function or from the menu to each function, the desktop icon disappears. However,  do not appear unless the record message is played or erased.

Display setting

Displaying Your Favorite Image on the Screen

Default setting	Stand-by display: Cat And Dog Wake-up display: London Bridge Dialing: standard Calling: standard Mail sending: standard Mail receiving: standard Checking: standard
-----------------	---

You can set your favorite image such as a photographed still image or downloaded image on the display.

You can set an image as follows:

Item (Display)	What can be stored
Stand-by display	Set a calendar or image* to be displayed on the standby display. You can also set a movie, i-motion or i-cuppli standby display, or set no image (OFF).
Wake-up display	Set a message or image* to be displayed when the power is turned on. You can also set no message/image (OFF).
Dialing	Set an image* to be displayed when you make a voice call.
Calling	Set an image* to be displayed when you receive voice/videophone call.
Mail sending	Set an image* to be displayed when you send a mail.
Mail receiving	Set an image* to be displayed when you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free.
Checking	Set an image* to be displayed when you perform the Check messages (p.274), the Check new message or the Check new SMS (p.105, p.160 and p.197).

*: In addition to a still image, an animation and an original animation are also available.

- Images, movies and i-motions stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be set in this function.

Setting the display for the standby display

- You cannot select a 'Calendar' when the date and time is not set in 'Set local time'.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Display" ► "Display setting".

2 Select "Stand-by display".

3 Select the item you want to set.

- To display no image
Select "OFF".
- To display a calendar
Select "Calendar".
Select "Background"/"No background".
When you set to "Background", select a background image.
How to select an image → p.294
- To display an image
Select "Image" and select an image.
How to select an image → p.294
- To display a movie or i-motion
Select "i-motion" and select a movie or i-motion.
Some i-motion may not be available for the display.
How to select a movie/i-motion → p.306
- To set the i-cuppli standby display
Select "i-cuppli display" and select software.
When "i-cuppli" is set, "i" appears
For the details of "i-cuppli display" → p.86

When the calendar is set to the standby display

The calendar appears on the standby display. You can check the previous or next month calendar or set your schedule with a quick operation.

To check the previous or next month calendar

While the standby display is displayed, press  (Select) or slide  to have the pointer on a calendar so that you can select the calendar. Press  (Select) again or select the calendar with the pointer. Then press  to display the previous month calendar or  to display the next month calendar.

When a "Desktop icon" has been pushed on the standby display, pressing  (Select) selects the Desktop icon or calendar used last. If the Desktop icon is selected, select the calendar. And Press  (Select) again or select the calendar with the pointer. Then press  or  to display the previous or next month calendar.

When you want to start up Schedule function.

Select a calendar and press  (Select) to start the Schedule function, so that you can enter the schedules for the displayed month.

Public holidays are based on the "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律 (平成13年法律第59号) (Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and Old-Age Welfare Law)" (As of JUL, 2004)

- When a Pre-installed animation or an animation stored in the image is set and the FOMA terminal is opened, the first frame of the animation appears as the standby display. However, in case of SWF*, pressing either  or  stops playing the animation and the stopped animation is displayed as a standby display.
* SWF is a file format of Flash image. → p.46
- If a movie and i-motion is your standby display, that movie or i-motion will be played when you open your FOMA terminal. Press  or  to stop playing the movie or i-motion. Also, when the terminal is set to the manner mode, you will only see the image. During movie/i-motion replay, icons that are supposed to be displayed in the second line on the standby display such as "V", "i" and "A", clocks, and desktop icons are not displayed.
- You cannot use the "Phone To function", "Mail To function" and "Web To function" (p.112, p.113 and p.114) from the i-motion standby display.
- When "Automatic display" (p.125) is set, the setting of "Automatic display" is given priority over this function. Opening the FOMA terminal displays no image.
- The setting of "i-cuppli standby display" (p.86) is given priority over this function setting if the "i-cuppli standby display" is set.

Setting the display for the Wake-up display

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Display setting".

2 Select "Wake-up display".

3 Select the item you want to set.

To display no image

Select "OFF".

To display an image

Select "Message" and enter a message.

Up to 50 full-width or 100 half-width characters can be entered.
Entering characters → p.298

To display an image

Select "Image" and select an image.

How to select an image → p.294

Setting an Image for Incoming/outgoing calls or mail

1 Select ► ► "Display" ► "Display setting".

2 Select the item for which you want to set an image.

Dialing

It will set the image displayed when you make a voice/video/phone call.

Calling

It will set the image displayed when you receive a voice/video/phone call.

Mail sending

It will set the image displayed when you send an i-mode mail or SMS.

Mail receiving

It will set the image displayed when you receive an i-mode mail, SMS, Msg. Request/Free.

Checking

It will set the image displayed when you make inquiries to the service or check i-mode or SMS.

3 Select the item you want to set.

If there are your original folders, you can select an image from them.

How to select an image → p.294

To check the image

Highlight the item to be checked and press (Play).

Press to return to the list screen of image sets.



● If the Called settings confront with each other, the priority of the image displays is as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear.

① i-motion set in the phonebook registration image

② The image of the phonebook registration image

③ The incoming call image of the i-Links

④ The screen display settings

⑤ The incoming call image of the Group i-Links

Display phonebook image

Setting the Display of Images Stored in the Phonebook

Default setting ON

When you receive a voice call or videophone call from a telephone number registered with a still image or movie, you can set whether or not to display the image.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Incoming call" ► "Disp. PH-book image".

To display the image stored in the Phonebook

Select "ON".

To display the image set in "Display setting"

Select "OFF".



● If the Called settings confront with each other, the priority of the image displays are as follows. ① has the highest priority. However, if an i-motion operates as a ring tone, the i-motion will appear.

① i-motion set in the phonebook registration image

② The image of the phonebook registration image

③ The incoming call image of the i-Links

④ The screen display settings

⑤ The incoming call image of the Group i-Links

● Regardless of the settings made in this function, you will not see any images on the screen data (p.201) phonebook.

Setting the Way the Image Window is Displayed

Default setting Settings: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 (Pictograph: ON)
Image set: Pre-install (1) Called: ON (Image: phone number)
Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)

You can set the message display, wallpaper and clock display on the image window.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Image window".

2 Select how you want the display.

ON : Sets the image window settings.

OFF: The image window displays nothing.

3 Specify the setting for each item.

Stand-by : Sets to fail/not fail items to be displayed on the image window (ON/OFF). When "ON" is set, the display light of the image window does not light up when a call, etc., comes in. The image window does not display the receiving message or the animation for an alarm notification.

Clock type : Sets the type of clock to display and the pictograph display of icons including the battery icon (ON/OFF).

Image set : Sets the background image of the image window ON/OFF (no wallpaper). When "ON" is set, you can select one image as the image window's background from 10 images in the "Pre-installed" folder, pictures (images) taken with the built-in camera and downloaded images. When "OFF" is set, the image window has no background.

Called : Sets display/not display of the caller's phone number when a call comes in (ON/OFF). When "ON" is set, you can select a display pattern from "Image+phone number", "Image" and "Phone number".

Note

- Even when "Lighting" under "Display light" is set to "OFF" to keep the display light of the image window off, if you set "Connection" to "ON" and "Display light" to "ON" in this function, the display light of the image window lights when a voice/video call comes in or during a call, infrared exchange session or data communication.
- Clock displays other than Analog 1 and 2 in "Clock type" are displayed in accordance with the "Clock display" setting.

Mail : Sets display/not display of the sender, sent date and time and subject when a mail comes in (ON/OFF).

Connection : Sets display/not display of an image or animation indicating the connection status when a voice/video call comes in, or during a voice/video call, infrared exchange or data communication (ON/OFF). When "ON" is set, you can further set the display light ON/OFF.



- When "Called" is set to "ON", the caller's name (stored name) and the icon are displayed if the caller's phone number is stored in the phonebook. When the caller does not notify his/her caller ID, the reason for no caller ID appears. If "Called" is set to "OFF", "Calling" is displayed.
- When you receive a new mail, "Received message" appears. Depending on the "Mail" setting, the display changes as follows:
 - When the "Mail" is set to "ON"
 - "Received message" is displayed with the sender's mail address, sent date and time, and subject for a while and then the display changes to the 「受信済メール」 icon. Pressing [Home] displays the sender's mail address, sent date and time and subject again. If you press [Home] once again, the display returns to the standby display. When the sender's mail address is stored in the phonebook, the sender identification is displayed by the (stored) name. When there are multiple received mails, the sender's mail address or name, sent date and time, and subject for the latest 3 mails are displayed (p.41). However, when you receive a mail in a folder with 「レギュリティ」 (p.219) from a sender with the 「白黒」 (p.203) setting, the sender's identification, sent date and time, and subject are not displayed.
 - When "Mail" is set to "OFF"
 - "Received message" is displayed for a while and then the display changes to the 「受信済メール」 icon. Even if you press [Home], the sender's mail address, sent date and time, and subject are not displayed.
 - The "Received message" will also disappear if you erase the 「受信済メール」 in desktop icon.
 - If [Home] is pressed when receiving a mail from the sender who has been stored in the phonebook as secret data in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", the sender (name), the subject and the received date and time are displayed. The sender (mail address) and the subject are displayed for the usual time.
 - The clock display of "Analog 1-2" set under "Stand-by" is for reference.
 - When "Image window" is set to "Depend on software", if you further set an H-upk supporting image window display setting to the standby display, the image window follows the H-upk software's display settings.
 - When "Stand-by" is set to "ON", icons such as 「不斉」 (p.203) or 「受信済メール」 (p.41) are not displayed. Animations for alarm notification of "Schedule", "Alarm clock" and "ToDo" are not displayed either.
 - The display light ON/OFF setting for the image window is subject to the "Lighting" setting in "Display light". While charging with the external power source such as an AC adapter, the display light setting for the indicator display is subject to the "Charging" setting in "Display light".
 - Even when "Lighting" under "Display light" is set to "OFF" to keep the display light of the image window off, if you set "Connection" to "ON" and "Display light" to "ON" in this function, the display light of the image window lights when a voice/video call comes in or during a call, infrared exchange session or data communication.
 - Clock displays other than Analog 1 and 2 in "Clock type" are displayed in accordance with the "Clock display" setting.

Display light

Setting Whether to Turn On/Off the Display Light for the Display and Keys

Default setting	Lighting: ON / Server (Light time: 5 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2
-----------------	--

You can set how the display light for the display, image window and keypad is turned on/off. You can set the following items:

Purpose	Item	Description
Display light on/off setting	Lighting	ON When the FOMA terminal is opened, the display light for the display and keypad* is ON for about 15 seconds. When a call or mail comes in while the FOMA terminal is folded, the display light of the image window lights up.
		OFF The display light for the display, image window and keypad is OFF.
	Charging	Standard The same setting as "ON" for "Lighting".
		All time When the FOMA terminal is opened, the display light for the display and keypad* is ON all the time. While the FOMA terminal is folded, the display light of the image window lights up.
Power saver mode setting	Power saver mode (Set from the "Lighting" setting)	ON After the specified light time elapses, the standby display and the image window is turned off (Power saver mode).
		OFF The power saver mode will not be activated.
Display light area setting	Area	LCD+Keys The display light for the display, image window and keypad is ON.
		LCD The display light for the display and image window is ON.
Display light brightness setting	Brightness	Selects from "Level 1" (dark), "Level 2" (normal) or "Level 3" (bright).

* : If the "Area" is set to "LCD", the display light is OFF.

<Example: Setting the display light for the usual time>

1 Select [Menu] > [Display] > "Display light".

2 Select "Lighting".

To set the display light during charging

Select "Charging".

Select the display light setting from "Standard"/"All time".

To set the area where the display light is ON

Select "Area".

Select the display light area from "LCD+Keys"/"LCD".

To set the brightness of the display light

Select "Brightness".

Select the brightness of the display light from "Level 1", "Level 2" and "Level 3".

3 Select the item to be set.

To turn the display light on

Select "ON".

Select the power saving mode from "Valid/Invalid" (ON/OFF).

If it is set to "Off", you set up the time shifting to the power saving mode in the range between 02 and 20 minutes.

If you do not want to turn the display light on

Select "OFF".

"OFF" is displayed on the standby display.

- During a videophone call, the "Display light" setting in the videophone is given priority.
- When the Power Saver mode starts with the FOMA terminal opened, the display light for the display is turned off, and "Multi function key" and "Flash" at intervals of 5 seconds. Press keypad and the Power saver will be disabled.
- If the FOMA terminal goes into the Power saver mode while it is folded, the display light of the image window turns off.
- Even when "Charging" is set to "All time on", if no operation is made on the FOMA terminal for about 15 seconds, the display light only lights at the "Level1" brightness while charging, to maximize the charging efficiency.
- Even if you set "Charging" to "All time" and "Area" to "LCD+Keys" in charging during a videophone call, the display light for the keypad is turned off with no operation for about 15 seconds.
- Hold down (F) for 1 second or more to turn on/off the display light.
- However, you cannot switch on/off during character entry, videophone call, remote monitoring or i-ccpds. If you perform these operations during charging, the "Charging" setting in Display light setting will not be changed.
- The light works with the setting of "Lighting" when charge ends and the charging indicator disappears, even if "All time" is set for "Charging".
- When the standby display is displayed from the task menu while any of the menu functions is running, or when "1-upply standby display" (p.85) is set, the power saver mode is not activated.

Color pattern

Selecting the Display Color

Default setting Pattern 1

You can select the display color pattern such as characters and background.

1 Select (Menu) ► (Display) ► "Color pattern".

2 Select a color pattern.

While selecting a color pattern, the display color pattern changes to the selected color pattern.

- Icons and images will not change even if this setting is changed. In addition, there are some data or functions, such as i-motion set screen, which have color pattern that will not change even if this setting is changed.

Illumination

Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash at Incoming Call

Default setting Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1
Msg. Request: Color 1 Msg. Free: Color 1
Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1 to 12

You can set the flashing color and flashing pattern of the incoming call lamp that alerts you to incoming voice/videophone calls, mail or Msg. Request/Free. You can also change the flashing color name or adjust the color tone.

You can set the following items:

Item	Description
Set color	Phone Select the flashing color ¹ of the incoming call lamp when a voice call comes in. Video-phone Select the flashing color ¹ of the incoming call lamp when receiving videophone calls. Mail Select the flashing color ¹ of the incoming call lamp when receiving i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication. Msg. Request Select the flashing color ¹ of the incoming call lamp when receiving Msg. Request. Msg. Free Select the flashing color ¹ of the incoming call lamp when receiving Msg. Free.
Set pattern	Standard Set the incoming call lamp to flash in fixed intervals. Melody linkage Set the incoming call lamp to flash in accordance with the melody ² .
Adjust color	Edit color name Change the color name for Color 1 to 12. Adjust color tone Adjust the color tone for Color 1 to 12.

1: Select the flashing color from Color 1 to 12 or Gradation.

2: When no flashing pattern is set to the melody or when you receive i-motion, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Standard".

- The flashing pattern of (F) and (F) is the same as that of the incoming call lamp, but their flashing color is blue only.
- You can set a flashing color for incoming calls or mail from each specified phone number, mail address or group. → p.120

1 Select (Menu) ► (Incoming call) ► "Illumination".

2 Specify the setting for each item.

Set color:

Set the flashing color of the incoming call lamp at incoming calls or mail.

Select the item which you want to set from "Phone", "Video-phone", "Mail", "Msg. Request" and "Msg. Free", and then set a flashing color.

While selecting a flashing color, the incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color.

Set pattern:

Select the flashing pattern of the incoming call lamp from "Standard" and "Melody linkage".



Adjust color:

Set "Edit color name" and "Adjust color tone" for the incoming call illumination.

In "Edit color name", select a color you want to change and enter a new color name. Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Entering characters → p.256

In "Adjust color tone", select a color you want to adjust and adjust its color tone. As the color types of Color 1 to 12 are different, they cannot be adjusted to the same color tone. The gradation cannot be adjusted.

- When a voice message recorded with the "Voice announce" function is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in a fixed pattern regardless of this setting.
- When "Pattern 1", "Pattern 2" or "Pattern 3" is set to the ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes in accordance with the melody regardless of this setting.
- When remote monitoring is received, the flashing color is "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is "Standard" regardless of the settings of this function.
- When exchanging between a miniSD memory card and data, the light will flash in "Color 5", regardless of the settings made here.
- During charging and shooting, the color and flashing color of the incoming call lamp is red regardless of the "Adjust color tone" setting.

Illumination in talk

Setting the Incoming Call Lamp to Flash During a Call

Default setting OFF

You can set the flashing color of the incoming call lamp during a voice or videophone call.

- You can select the flashing color from seven kinds of colors and three kinds of gradations.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Talk" ► "Illumination in talk".

2 Select the flashing color you want to set.

When you do not want to flash the lamp during the call
Select "OFF".

Font

Changing the Font Setting

Default setting Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

You can change character font displayed on the display or Image window to your favorite font (typeface).

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Display" ► "Font".

2 Select the item you want to set.

To select the font type

Select "Type".

Select font type between "Font 1/Font 2".

Example of Font 1:

あいうABC123

Example of Font 2:

あいうABC123

To set the font thickness

Select "Thickness".

Select the font thickness from "Thin", "Medium" and "Bold".

Clock display

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting Display: ON Size: Big Object: Local

You can set the clock display and change the clock display size and type in the standby display. You can also set the standby display to display no date and no time.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Clock" ► "Clock display".

2 Select the item you want to set.

To set the way the clock display is displayed

Select "Display".

Select the display from "ON" and "OFF".

To set the clock display size

Select "Size".

Select the display size from "Big" and "Small".

To change the clock to display

Select "Object".

Select the clock(s) to display from "Local" and "Local&Remote".

- If "Display" is set to "OFF", when "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is set, and which appear in the standby display are not displayed.

- You cannot set "Size: Big" in combination with "Object: Local&Remote".

- Clocks are automatically displayed in accordance with the setting here except for the Analog clock displays in the Image window.

● Security Settings

Security Code	000
Changing Your Security Code	000
Setting PIN Codes	000
Cancelling PIN Lock	000
Lock Functions	000
■ Restricting Operations and Functions of a FOMA Terminal	
Preventing Other People from Using Your FOMA Terminal	000
Locking the Functions such as Phonebook or Schedule	000
Preventing the Side Keys from Being Pressed Accidentally	000
■ Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls and Sending/Receiving Mails	
Prohibiting a Call by Dialing	000
Setting the Dialed or Received Call Record Display	000
Preventing Other People from Seeing Your Phonebook and Schedule	000
Keeping Other People from Viewing Your Mail in Inbox/Outbox	000
Blocking Nuisance Calls	000
Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls to/from Each Specified Number	000
Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID	000
Muting Ring Tone of a Call from a Caller Not Registered in the Phonebook	000
Rejecting Calls from Caller Not Registered in the Phonebook	000
Prohibiting Incoming/Outgoing Communication	000
Limiting Phone Numbers to which You Can Make a Call	000
Other Security Settings	000

Security Code

The FOMA terminal provides you with many convenient functions. To use some functions, you must enter the security code. Also, there is a NW security code and I-mode password that you will use in network services. Please set or activate them to suit your purpose to utilize the FOMA terminal.

- Note that if you forget any of these security codes, you will have to bring your FOMA terminal and your personal ID (e.g. your driver's license) to a DoCoMo service counter.
- To prevent unauthorized use by others, change these security codes (excluding the NW security code) to your desired numbers after purchase. Be sure to remember your new security codes by keeping a separate record.

Security code

A security code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that is required when setting a security function, deleting data, or resetting. You can change this code to the number of your choice using your FOMA terminal. → p.193

NW security code

A NW security code is a 4-digit security code that you have to enter when using some of the network services. You can set your own NW security code at the time of purchase. You cannot change your NW security code using your FOMA terminal or any other phone.

PIN <PIN1/PIN2 codes>

You can set PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the FOMA card. For details of PIN1 code and PIN2 code, see p.194.

I-mode password

An I-mode password is a 4 digit password that you have to enter to register or delete sites from My menu, use message services, and to subscribe/cancel any paid I-mode services. See p. xxx for details. At the time of purchase, the I-mode password is set to "0000" (four zeros) by default. You can change this number to the number of your choice. In addition to your I-mode password, other information service providers may also require passwords of their own to use their services.

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting 0000 (four zeros)

To protect your important data stored in your FOMA terminal and enjoy your FOMA terminal more effectively, you can change your own security code (4- to 8-digit).

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Lock/Security" ► "Change security code", and then enter the security code.

- 2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code.

A message is displayed asking you whether to change the security code.

- 3 Select "YES".

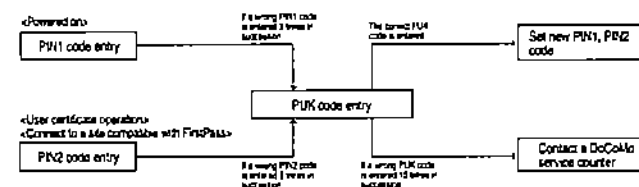
To cancel the security code change
Select "NO".

Setting PIN Codes

Default setting PIN1 code: 0000 (four zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (four zeros) PIN1 code entry key: OFF

The PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) to be entered each time when the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use of your FOMA card. The PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that is entered when using "FDN setting". → p.XX

- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal, you can use the current PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.
- The PIN1 code and PIN2 code are stored in the FOMA card.
- If you fail to enter PIN1 code/PIN2 code for a total of 3 times, the PIN will automatically be locked, and you cannot use the PIN code anymore. Be sure to keep a separate record of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your copy of the FOMA subscription application form contains your PUK code. A PUK code is an 8 digit number to cancel the PIN lock when PIN1 code/PIN2 code is locked.
- If the PUK code is entered incorrectly 10 times in succession, the FOMA card will be locked completely. Keep your copy of the FOMA subscription application form in a safe place.
- If you forget your PUK code or your FOMA terminal is completely locked, contact a DoCoMo service counter.



● Setting the PIN1 code entry when the power is turned on <PIN1 code entry set>

To prevent any unauthorized use of your FOMA card, set the FOMA terminal to prompt to enter the PIN1 code when the power is turned on.

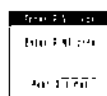
- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "PIN setting", and then enter the security code.
- 2 Select "PIN1 code entry set".
- 3 Select the item you want to set.
To enter PIN1 code when the terminal is turned on
Select "ON".
Not to enter PIN1 code when the terminal is turned on
Select "OFF".

● Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

- To change the PIN1 code, "PIN1 code entry set" must be set to "ON".

<Example: Changing the PIN1 code number>

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "PIN setting" and enter security code.
- 2 Select "Change PIN1 code", and enter your current 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.



To change the PIN2 code
Select "Change PIN2 code", and enter your current 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.

- 3 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.
To change the PIN2 code
Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.
- 4 Enter the new PIN1 code again.
To change the PIN2 code
Enter the new PIN2 code again.

● Entering the PIN1 Code When the Power is Turned On

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", turning on the power displays the PIN1 code entry screen. Enter your PIN1 code.

- Note that if you do not enter the PIN1 code and leave the entry screen displayed, you cannot use the FOMA terminal and the following operation is not available.

- Incoming voice and videophone calls
- Alarm notification for "Schedule" or "ToDo"
- Receiving mail and Msg. RequestFree
- Activating i-apps software automatically
- Reserved update of software

- 1 Turn the FOMA terminal on.
- 2 Enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.



When the correct PIN1 code is entered, first the "FOMA" logo appears and then the standby display appears.

Canceling PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times in the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen, the PIN1/PIN2 code will be locked. In this case, cancel the PIN1/PIN2 code lock, and then set a new PIN1/PIN2 code.

- For the PUK code, check with (your copy of) the FOMA subscription application form supplied to you when you subscribe to the FOMA service.

<Example: Canceling the PIN1 code lock>

- 1 Enter the 8-digit PUK code.



- 2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code.

To cancel the PIN2 code lock
Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code.

- 3 Enter the new PIN1 code again.

To cancel the PIN2 code lock
Enter the new PIN2 code again.

Lock Function

The FOMA terminal has the lock function to prevent other people from using it without permission or viewing your phonebook and mail.

The functions you can set are as follows.

Purpose	Description	Function	See page
To prevent other people from using the FOMA terminal	Disables all operations except for turning the power ON/OFF and receiving the remote monitoring.	All lock	p.200
To prevent other people from viewing data such as "Phonebook" and "Schedule"	Stores data such as "Phonebook" and "Schedule" as secret data that cannot be called up unless the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" is set and calls up such data (The "Secret only mode" calls up secret data only.).	Secret mode/Secret only mode	p.201
To prevent other people from seeing or rewriting your private information	Disables the display and editing of private information such as "Phonebook", "Schedule" and "Mail". The "i-mode" and "i-appli" software start-up are also disabled.	PIM lock	p.204
To prevent personal calls from being made	Disables call making and mail sending by dialing. Only phone numbers and mail addresses stored in the phonebook, Dialed calls and Sent address are available.	Keypad dial lock	p.205
To prevent other people from seeing the dialed/received call records	Disables the display of "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial".	Record display set	p.206
To use the FOMA terminal without being concerned about an incoming voice or videophone call	Disables voice/videophone call dialing/receiving, i-mode connection and mail transmission.	Sell mode	p.207
To prevent unintentional key operation	Disables the side key functions.	Side keys guard	p.208
To limit phone numbers that can be called	Stores phone number lists in a SIM/USIM card other than the FOMA card.	FDN setting	p.XX

All lock

Preventing Other People from Using Your FOMA Terminal

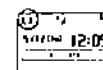
Default setting Canceled

When the All lock is set, all operations except for turning the power ON/OFF are unavailable. This function prevents other people from using your FOMA terminal without permission.

- During the All lock, you cannot make and receive voice/videophone calls.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the All lock.

Setting the All lock

- Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "All lock", and then enter the security code.

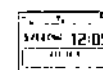


When the All lock is set, "All lock" and  are displayed. Security code --p.192

Cancelling the All lock

- If you fail to cancel the All lock 5 times in succession, your FOMA terminal is turned off. However, you can turn it on again.

- Enter the security code in the security code entry screen during the All lock and press .



The All lock is canceled and  disappears. Security code --p.192



- During the All lock, you cannot make even an emergency call (e.g. 110, 119, and 118).
- If you set an animation for the standby display, only the first frame of the animation appears when the FOMA terminal is opened during the All lock.
- During the All lock, no ring tone sounds for incoming voice/videophone calls. After canceling the All lock, the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- "Remote monitor" is available even when All lock is on.
- When All lock is on, you will receive no alarm notification even if you set them in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo". After you cancel All lock, you will see the desktop icon "Missed alarm" on the standby display.
- When the All lock is on, you can receive automatically the Msg. RequestFree, i-mode mails and SMS, but you will not see receiving display and the receiving result. Cancel the All lock and you will see the icon that indicates the type of message you have received.

PIM lock

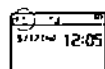
Locking the Functions such as Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting Canceled

To prevent other people from seeing or rewriting your private information, you can lock the functions such as "Phonebook", "Schedule" and "Mail".

- When the PIM lock is set, "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" up until the entry are all deleted. Phone numbers/mail addresses recorded after this function is set, however, the caller/sender's name does not appear even if he/she is stored in the phonebook.
- You cannot use "Utilities", "Restrictions", name display for incoming/outgoing voice/videophone calls and "Automatic display" set to phonebook entries.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the PIM lock.

- 1 Select **[Menu]** **[Lock/Security]** **[PIM lock]**, and then enter the security code.



When the PIM lock is set, "P" appears. If "Keypad dial lock" is already set, "K" appears.
Security code → p.192
To cancel the PIM lock
Perform the same procedure as the setting during the PIM lock.
The PIM lock is canceled and "P" disappears.

NOTE

- If you perform a prohibited operation during the PIM lock, a message indicating that the PIM lock is being set appears.
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, the PIM lock setting may become invalid. To prevent other people from using the phonebook, store data in the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" → p.201
- When the PIM lock is on, you will receive no alarm notification even if you set them in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo". After you cancel the PIM lock, you will see the desktop icon "Missed alarm" on the standby display.
- When the PIM lock is on, you can automatically receive the Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mail and SMS, but you will not see receiving display and the receiving result. Cancel PIM lock and you will see the icon that indicates the type of message you have received.
- While the PIM lock is on, you cannot display or reply movie/motion files and melody, image and character files except for pre-installed files. When you have set a movie/motion file or a non pre-installed melody/image file to the ring tone or the standby display, the FOMA terminal operates following the initial setting while the PIM lock is on.

Side keys guard

Preventing the Side Keys from Being Pressed Accidentally

Default setting: ON when closed

The Side keys guard function is useful for preventing the side keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and placed in your bag, etc..

- Under the following conditions, the side key function is enabled regardless of the setting made here.
However, holding down **[Power]** for 1 second or more does not start up the camera.
 - When the FOMA terminal is open
 - When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
 - When an external connector such as a PC is connected to the external connector
- The setting for Side keys guard remains unchanged even if the terminal power is turned off.

- 1 Select **[Menu]** **[Other settings]** **[Side keys guard]**.

To enable the side key functions
Select "ON".

To disable the side key functions
Select "OFF".
"OFF" appears on the standby display.

NOTE

- To switch between ON and OFF, press **[Menu]** and hold down **[Power]** for 1 second or more.
- When this function is set to "ON", you cannot check missed calls or new mail with your FOMA terminal folded even if the "ToDo notice setting" (p.77) is set to "ON". In addition, you cannot check "Missed calls" (p.151) as well.
- Even if this function is set to "OFF", pressing the side key turns on the display light for the image window.
- When this function is set to "ON", you cannot take pictures (still images) (using the shutter and light) with your FOMA terminal folded.

Keypad dial lock

Prohibiting a Call by Dialing

Default setting: Canceled

When this function is set, voice or videophone calls by dialing with the keypad are prohibited. Dialing from previously stored "Phonebook" entries before setting keypad dial lock and from "Dialed calls" or "Redial" entries after setting keypad dial lock is possible.

If the FOMA terminal is used for business, private use can be prevented by previously storing necessary phone numbers in the Phonebook and by setting this function.

- When "Keypad dial lock" is set existing, "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" are all deleted. However, "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" for calls received/dialed and "Received address" and "Sent address" for mail received/sent after this function is set are recorded. For unsent mail stored with address and body entered, the address is deleted but the body is left. Unsent mail stored with the address only is deleted.
- While the Keypad dial lock is set, you cannot make a voice/videophone call or compose i-mode mail/SMS via the following functions/operations.
 - Dialing • Incoming call records • Incoming mail list • Mail member
 - Desktop icons • Barcode reader • "Record message" replay
- When the Keypad dial lock is on, the following operations cannot be done.
 - Storing/editing/deleting Phonebook entries
 (Note: Depending on the i-mode DX (p.66), the names for group 01 to 19 in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit) can be changed.)
 - Using "Phone To" or "Mail To" functions
 - Entering mail addresses using keypads
 - Replying to mail addresses that are not stored in your phonebook
 - Replying to mail addresses that are not stored in your phonebook
 - Replying to mail addresses that are not stored in your phonebook
 - Phonebook data transfer using [赤外線通信機能]
 - Copy/Delete of the phonebook by [FOMA力一ト操作]
 - Import of phonebook from mVSD
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the Keypad dial lock.

- 1 Select **[Menu]** **[Lock/Security]** **[Keypad dial lock]**, and then enter the security code.



The Keypad dial lock is set and "K" appears. If the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" is already set, "S" appears. If the "PIM lock" is already set, "P" appears.
Security code → p.192

To cancel the Keypad dial lock
Perform the same procedure as described above for the Keypad dial lock.
The Keypad dial lock is canceled and "K" disappears.

- Even if the Keypad dial lock is set, you can make a voice call to emergency numbers (e.g. 110, 119, and 118) by dialing with the keypad.
- If you perform a prohibited operation during the Keypad dial lock, a message indicating that the Keypad dial lock is being set appears.
- The FOMA card inserted while setting the Keypad dial lock enables storing of phonebook entries when it is inserted into another FOMA terminal. Note that calls can be made from the other FOMA terminal to phone numbers not stored in the phonebook.

Setting the Dialed or Received Call Record Display

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON
-----------------	---

You can set your FOMA terminal not to display the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". It is useful for preventing other people from viewing your dialed or received call records.

- Even after the FOMA terminal is set not to display record, the information of "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" are recorded.
- The settings for the Record display set remain unchanged even if the terminal power is turned off.

1 Select (Menu) > > "Other settings" > "Record display set", and then enter the security code.

Security code → p.192

To set the display of "Received calls" or "Received address"

Select "Received calls".

Select "display the Received calls/not display the received calls" (ON/OFF).

To set the display of "Redial", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address"

Select "Redial/Dialed calls".

Select "display the Redial/Dialed calls/not display the Redial/Dialed calls" (ON/OFF).

NOTE

- When "Received calls" is set to "OFF" and a call is missed, the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display. If you try to display "Received calls" from the "Missed call" desktop icon, a message indicating you that the "Received calls" is set to "OFF" appears. In this case, the desktop icon does not disappear. To delete the "Missed call" desktop icon, hold down  for 1 second or more.
- Even while the "Received calls" is set to "OFF", "Record message" can be played.

Secret mode/Secret only mode

Default setting	Secret mode: Canceled	Secret only mode: Canceled
-----------------	-----------------------	----------------------------

You can store data such as data in the "Phonebook" and "Schedule" that you do not want other to know as secret data, which cannot be called up without entering the security code. To make secret data, register "Phonebook" or "Schedule" in Secret mode or Secret only mode.

In Secret mode, you can call up all data in "Phonebook" or "Schedule" including secret data. In Secret only mode, you can only call up secret "Phonebook" or "Schedule" data.

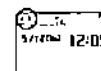
- If you perform operations for setting the Secret mode or Secret only mode during the Secret mode or Secret only mode, the current mode is canceled.
- If you make or receive a voice/videophone call during the Secret mode or Secret only mode, the current mode is canceled.
- You cannot store phonebook entries as secret data in the FOMA card.
- The Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when the terminal power is turned off.

Storing data in the phonebook and Schedule as secret data

- The operation method for the "Phonebook" and "Schedule" in the Secret mode and Secret only mode set is the same as that without the Secret mode and Secret only mode set.

<Example: Storing data in the Secret mode>

1 Select (Menu) > > "Lock/Security" > "Secret mode", and then enter the security code.



When the Secret mode is set, "S" appears. If "Keypad dial lock" is already set, "KL" appears.

Security code → p.192

To cancel the Secret mode

Press .

The secret mode is canceled and "S" disappears.

2 Store data in "Phonebook" or "Schedule".

The data is stored as secret data.

How to store entries in Phonebook → p.168

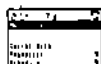
How to store entries in Schedule → p.218

- When the "Phonebook" or "Schedule" is called up in the Secret mode, "S" appears for secret data.
- "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries stored as secret data cannot be called up, corrected or deleted unless you set the FOMA terminal to the secret mode or Secret only mode. For the "Schedule", alarm notification is given in the normal mode but no alarm message appears.
- If you store phonebook entries in the memory number "000" to "009" as secret data, you cannot dial these numbers by using the "Two-touch dialing" unless the Secret mode or Secret only mode is set.
- When the caller whose phone number and name are stored in the phonebook as secret data makes a call with his/her caller ID informed, the stored name is not displayed even during the Secret mode or Secret only mode. In addition, in a caller's phone number is recorded in the "Received calls", but his/her stored name is not recorded.
- The following functions cannot be set for Phonebook entries stored as secret data.
 - Automatic display → p.125
 - Restrictions → p.141
 - Utilities → p.120
- When you modify "Phonebook" or "Schedule" in Secret mode, the modified data becomes a secret data. Moreover, if you modify even 1 phone number or mail address, all the rest of the numbers and addresses stored in the modified memory number will become secret data.
- When a phonebook entry with the "Utilities" function set is stored as secret data, the "Utilities" setting for the entry is canceled.
- When a phonebook entry with the "Utilities" set is stored as secret data, the "Utilities" setting becomes invalid. If you change the Phonebook entry stored as secret data to the normal "phonebook" entry, the "Utilities" setting becomes valid.

Displaying secret data only

<Secret only mode>

- 1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "Secret only mode", and then enter the security code.



When the Secret only mode is set, "S" flashes and the number of secret data is displayed. If "Keypad dial lock" is already set, "K" flashes. After a few seconds the standby display will reappear.

Security code → p.192

To cancel the Secret only mode

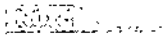
Press .

The secret only mode is canceled and "S" disappears.

- 2 Search the phonebook or check the schedule.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

How to check the schedule → p.222



- If you make a call by calling up secret data, the call is not recorded in the "Dialled calls" and "Redial".

Changing secret data to normal data

You can change data stored as secret data to normal data.

- 1 Call up a phonebook entry or schedule you want to delete in the Secret mode or Secret only mode.

How to search the Phonebook → p.116

How to check the Schedule → p.222

- 2 Select "Release secret" from the function menu.

The secret is canceled. During the Secret mode, "S" stops flashing and changes lighting.

Security

Keeping Other People from Viewing Your Mail in Inbox/Outbox

Default setting No security

You can activate security for Inbox, Outbox and Draft box to prevent others from viewing content of these boxes. Once security is activated for a box, your security code will be required to open the box.

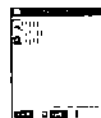
-  icon will be displayed for the box with security.
- Once security is activated for Inbox and Outbox, mail address can not be recorded to sent address list and received address list.

Composing/Sending I-mode mail

- 1 Select  [I-mode] ► "Mail settings" ► "Security" and then enter the security code.

About security codes → p.21

- 2 Select the box that you want to make the security setting.



The selected box is marked.

When you select the marked box again, it is unmarked.

- 3 When the setting is completed, press  [Finish].

Activating security for a folder

You can activate security for a folder. Once security is activated for a folder, your security code will be required to open the folder.

- For folders with security, "S" or "K" icons etc. will be displayed at the beginning of the folder name on the folder list screen.

- 1 Highlight the folder you want to activate security and select "Security ON/OFF" from the function menu.

- 2 Enter the security code and select "YES".

About security codes → p.21

When you selected the folder that is already specified for security setting

A message appears asking if it is OK to cancel the security.

Select "YES" to cancel the security.



- If security is imposed on the entire box, you need to enter the security code when opening the box. Entry of the security code is not required when you open the folder with security in the box again.
- Once you open a box or folder that is security protected, you can open other security protected boxes or folders without entering the security code until the mail function ends.
- A mail-connected file cannot be downloaded while the box or folder is security protected.

Blocking Nuisance Calls

With the FOMA terminal, you can use the following functions to block nuisance calls or malicious calls such as "one-ring calls".

Function name	Description	See page
Ring time	Sets the FOMA terminal not to start the ringing operation until the set period has elapsed. You can make a setting so that the missed call record will not list incoming calls that do not meet the set ringing time. This is an effective countermeasure against "one-ring calls" because no missed calls with short ringing time are recorded.	p.140
Reject unknown	Sets the FOMA terminal to reject incoming calls from the phone number not stored in the phonebook. This function is valid for callers whose phone numbers are notified. To reject incoming calls from callers without sending their phone numbers, set "Call setting w/o ID".	p.144
Call setting w/o ID	Sets the FOMA terminal to reject incoming calls from callers whose phone numbers are not notified. This function rejects or accepts incoming calls depending on the reason for no caller ID. Such reasons include "Not supported", "Payphone" and "User unset".	p.145
Call rejection	Sets the FOMA terminal to reject incoming calls from specified phone numbers. Incoming calls from those specified numbers are listed in the received calls record. This function is valid for callers whose phone numbers are notified. To reject incoming calls from callers without sending their phone numbers, set "Call setting w/o ID".	p.141
Bar nuisance call service	By storing a number to be blocked immediately after receiving the call, the FOMA terminal plays an announcement and rejects the future calls from that number. Since such calls are blocked through the mobile phone network, they are not recorded in the received calls record of the FOMA terminal. Even if you receive calls from the same phone number without caller IDs, the FOMA terminal rejects those calls. A separate subscription is required (subject to the monthly charge).	p.282

NOTE

- Do not call back unfamiliar phone numbers. Particularly, returning calls with your caller ID notified may cause unnecessary problems.
- When several functions for blocking nuisance calls are set at the same time, they are prioritized, with ① having the highest priority.
- When the call comes in identifying the caller's number
 - Bar nuisance call service
 - Call rejection/Reject unknown
 - Ring time
- When the call comes in without identifying the caller's number
 - Bar nuisance call service
 - Call setting w/o ID
 - Ring time

Restrictions

Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls to/from Each Specified Number

Default setting All canceled

To prevent personal calls from being made or to prevent nuisance calls, you can set restrictions for incoming calls and outgoing calls for each phone number stored in the phonebook.

You can set the following Restrictions functions:

Object	Function	Function description
Restrict outgoing calls	Prevent personal calls from being made.	Restrict dialing You can only call specified phone numbers.
Restrict incoming calls	Prevent nuisance calls.	Call rejection You cannot receive calls from specified phone numbers. 'Call rejection' is also valid for videophone.
		Call acceptance You can receive calls only from specified phone numbers. 'Call acceptance' is also valid for the videophone.
	Set specified numbers to automatically be forwarded to a specified number or voice mail center.	Call forwarding You can automatically forward calls from specified phone numbers to a specified phone number regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" is "Activate" or not. The call cannot be forwarded unless the destination is a videophone-support terminal that conforms to 3G-324M (p.87).
		Voice mail You can set calls from specified numbers to automatically be forwarded to the voice mail service center regardless of whether the "Voice mail" is "Activate" or not. The incoming videophone call continues without connected to the voice mail service center.

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers for each function.
- You cannot set the restrictions functions for the phonebook entries stored in the FOMA card.
- When the caller sends no caller ID, the restrictions functions are disabled. The "Caller ID request" service (p.284) and "Call setting w/o ID" (p.145) are useful if you have set them.
- You cannot set both the "Call rejection" and "Call acceptance", or the "Call forwarding" and "Voice mail" to the same phone number at the same time.
- You cannot set this to the phonebook saved in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- Changing or deleting specified numbers on phonebook will cause the Restriction functions to cancel. However, if "Restrict dialing" has been set, you cannot change or delete any numbers in your Phonebook.

Setting restrictions to phone numbers for Incoming/outgoing calls

The procedures to set restrictions to phone numbers stored in the phonebook for Incoming/outgoing calls are the same way.

1

Display the phonebook details screen you want to set.

How to search the phonebook → p.116

2 Select "Restrictions" from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

Security code → p.192

3 Select the function you want to set.

The "★" mark is attached to the set function.

To cancel the set function

Select the function with the "★" mark.

The function is canceled and the "★" mark disappears.

To set each function of restricting incoming/outgoing calls to multiple phone numbers

Press to go back to the phonebook details screen and display the phone number you want to set by pressing , and then follow steps 2 and 3.

If you go back to the standby display by pressing , you cannot additionally set the "Restrictions". In that case, first cancel all the "Restrictions" settings from the phone numbers already set, and then specify it to an additional one as well as to the canceled ones.



Restrict dialing

- When you set "Restrict dialing", the following operations are disabled: storing, modifying, copying between FOMA terminal (main terminal) and FOMA card, phonebook operation using the "JIM operation", all the dial calling including the specified phone numbers, and calling from the received calls.
- When you set "Restrict dialing", the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" are deleted. The dialed calls after this function is set will be recorded in the "Dialed calls" or "Redial".
- If you want to use the "Automatic display" (p.125) together with "Restrict dialing", set this function to the phonebook entry specified for the "Automatic display".
- Note that "Restrict dialing" may become invalid when you send data from an external device such as a PC.
- Even if "Restrict dialing" has been set, you can make an emergency call (e.g. 110, 119, and 118).

Call rejection/Call acceptance

- "Call rejection" and "Call acceptance" become valid only when the caller notifies you his/her caller ID. It is recommended that you should set the "Caller ID request" service (p.284) and "Call setting w/o ID" (p.145).
- You can receive I-mode mail or SMS regardless of "Call rejection" and "Call acceptance" functions.
- When "PIM Lock" (p.204) is set, the call rejection and call acceptance are disabled.
- When receiving a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call rejection or is other than those set to Call acceptance, this call is recorded as "Missed call" in "Received calls" (p.151) and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- When you are receiving a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call rejection or is other than those set to Call acceptance, even if you set the "Voice mail" service (p.271) or "Call forwarding" service (p.276) to "Activate", the call is rejected. However, if you set the ringing time to 0 second for the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, or if you are outside the service area or the power is turned off, the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated. Note that this call is not recorded in "Received calls" and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.

Call forwarding/Voice mails

- "Call forwarding" and "Voice mail" become invalid when the "PIM lock" is set.
- If you have a call from the caller whose phone number is set to Call forwarding or Voice mail, the ring tone sounds for 1 second and then the call will be forwarded to the specified phone number or voice mail service center. In this case, the call is recorded as "Missed call" in "Received calls" (p.151) and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display. Note that the operational priority is given to "Call forwarding" and "Voice mail" over the "Call waiting" service and "Arrival call act".
- When the forwarding number is not set, or if you do not subscribe to the "Call forwarding" service or "Voice mail" service, the call from the number set to the "Call forwarding" will be a "Missed call".

Checking the Restrictions settings

You can check the phone numbers on which "Restrictions" have been set for each function. You can also cancel the functions that have been set while checking the restrictions settings.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Restrictions", and then enter the security code.

Security code → p.192

When no phone number is set

A message notifying you that there is no set phone number appears.

2 Select a function with the "★" mark.

The phonebook list screen for the selected set function appears.

To cancel all the phone numbers on which the function has been set at once

Highlight the function with "★" mark, and then select "Release settings" from the function menu.

3 Select the phonebook entry you want to check for the phone number.

The phone number of the selected entry appears.

To cancel the Restrictions setting

Select the phone number you want to cancel

Call setting w/o ID

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting: Accept/Same as ring tone

When a call comes in without notifying the caller ID, you will be notified why the caller ID is not notified (Reason of no caller ID). There are 3 reasons, "User unset", "Payphone" and "Not supported", for each of which accept/reject can be set.

- When a call with the reason of no caller ID that is set to "Reject" comes in, such a call is recorded as a "Missed call" record in "Received calls". On the standby screen, a desktop icon that indicates "不在形" (あひ) is displayed.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Lock/Security" ► "Call setting w/o ID", and then enter the security code.

Security code → p.192

2 Select the reason for no caller ID you want to set.

Not supported: Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from the network that cannot send the caller ID, such as a call from overseas or a forwarded call from a general phone.

Payphone: However, depending on the intermediary phone companies, the caller ID may be informed. Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from a pay phone. "Payphone" appears when a call arrives from an NTT pay phone, etc.

User unset: Set whether to connect (Accept) or not connect (Reject) an incoming call from a caller who deliberately notifies no caller ID.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To accept incoming calls from phone numbers those do not notify the caller ID
Select "Accept", and select a ring tone from the Select ring tone screen.
Selecting a ring tone → p.163
To reject incoming calls from phone numbers those do not notify the caller ID
Select "Reject".

NOTE

- If you receive a call with no caller ID whose no caller ID reason has been set to "Accept", the reason for no caller ID appears.
- If you set "Same as ring tone" to a ring tone when "Accept" is set, the ring tone specified in "Phone" of "Select ring tone" sounds.
- If you receive a videophone with no caller ID, the ring tone specified in "Video-phone" of "Select ring tone" sounds.
- You can receive i-mode mail or SMS regardless of "Call rejection" and "Call acceptance" functions.

Ringing time

Setting the Time Until the Ringing Operation Starts

Default setting Set mute seconds: 0 second Missed calls display: Display

You can set a mute time for incoming calls from callers whose phone numbers are not stored in the phonebook between receiving the call and starting the ringing operation (notifying an incoming call). You can also set the FOMA terminal to not record such calls in missed calls to prevent unintentional callback from received calls to a nuisance call or malicious call with a short ringing time.

- The incoming call screen is displayed when a call comes in until the time specified in "Set mute seconds" has elapsed. No other call alert operations (playing a ring tone, vibrator, turning the incoming call lamp on) are performed. However, press  before the ringing operation starts to answer the call.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "incoming call" ► "Ringing time".

2 Select the item you want to specify.

To set a mute time until the ringing operation starts
Select "Set mute seconds".
Set the start time in the range of 00 to 99 seconds. Enter the time as 2 digits.
To set whether missed calls during the mute time are displayed
Select "Missed calls display".
Select the Missed calls display setting from "Display/Not display".

NOTE

- When several functions for restricting incoming calls are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows
 - When the call comes in identifying the caller's number
 - ① Bar nuisance call service
 - ② Call rejection/Call acceptance/Reject unknown
 - ③ Driving mode
 - ④ Ringing time
 - When the call comes in without identifying the caller's number
 - ① Bar nuisance call service
 - ② Call setting w/o ID
 - ③ Driving mode
 - ④ Ringing time

Reject unknown

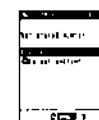
Rejecting Calls from Caller Not Registered in the Phonebook

Default setting Accept

You can set the FOMA terminal to reject incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the FOMA terminal (main unit) and FOMA card phonebooks.

- When the caller sends no caller ID, or when "PIM lock" is set, this function is disabled.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "Reject unknown", and then enter the security code.



Security code → p.192

To accept incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the phonebook
Select "Accept".
To reject incoming calls from phone numbers not stored in the phonebook
Select "Reject".

NOTE

- When this function is set to "Reject", if you receive a call from the caller whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, this call is recorded as "Missed call" in the "Received calls" (p.151) and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.
- When several functions for restricting incoming calls are set at the same time, they are prioritized as follows.
 - When the call comes in identifying the caller's number
 - ① Bar nuisance call service
 - ② Call rejection/Call acceptance/Reject unknown
 - ③ Driving mode
 - ④ Ringing time
 - When the call comes in without identifying the caller's number
 - ① Bar nuisance call service
 - ② Call setting w/o ID
 - ③ Driving mode
 - ④ Ringing time

Self mode

Prohibiting Incoming/Outgoing Communication

Default setting Cancelled

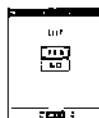
You can set to disable voice/videophone call dialing/receiving, i-mode connection and mail transmission. It is useful for using your FOMA terminal without concerning about an incoming voice or videophone call.

- If a voice or videophone call comes in during the Self mode, the caller hears an announcement informing that you are out of the service area or the power is off. When you are using the "Voice mail" service (p.271) or "Call forwarding" service (p.276), you can use these services in the same manner as when the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- During the Self mode, no desktop icons such as "Missed call" appears.
- During the Self mode, data communication with the Ir exchange or an external device is not possible.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel the Self mode.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Lock/Security" ► "Self mode".

A message is displayed asking you whether to execute setting.

2 Select "YES" and press [Select].



The Self mode will come on and you will see "SELF".

Not to set the Self mode
Select "NO".

To cancel the Self mode

Perform the same procedure as described above during the Self mode.
The self mode is canceled and "SELF" disappears.

- Even if the "Self mode" is set, you can make a voice call to emergency numbers (e.g. 110, 119, and 118). The self mode is canceled when a voice call to an emergency number is made.
- If you perform a prohibited operation during the Self mode, a message indicating that the Self mode is being set appears.
- Msg. Request/Free and i-mode mail received during the Self mode are stored in the i-mode center, and SMS are stored in the SMS center instead. After canceling the Self mode, receive these Msg. Request/Free, i-mode mail and SMS stored in these centers by "Check new message" and "Check new SMS". → p.105, p.180 and p.197
- During the Self mode, some i-mode software that requires communications may not work.

FDN setting

Limiting phone numbers to which you can make a call

Default setting OFF

With an SIM/USIM card that supports this function, you can choose to only make voice/ videophone calls to phone numbers that you have listed up (FDN list). This function disables outgoing calls to phone numbers not in the FDN list.

- The setting of this function is stored in the SIM/USIM card inserted in the FOMA terminal.
- When this function is turned to "ON", making voice/videophone calls and sending SMS are restricted. Some network services including Notify caller ID notification, Call waiting and Additional services cannot be controlled.
- Some SIM/USIM cards may not support this function. It may not be possible to register names in the FDN list.
- Your FOMA terminal does not support this function.

Adding phone numbers to call in the phone number list (FDN list)

- International phone numbers and numbers with sub address can be stored.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Lock/Security" ► "FDN setting".

2 Select "New" and enter PIN2 code.

PIN2 code → p XXX

3 Enter the name.

Use kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet, numbers and symbols to enter.

Entering characters → p.XXX

Up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch alphabet characters or numbers (or some of half-pitch symbols) can be entered for a name. The actual number of characters that can be entered varies depending on the SIM/USIM card that is inserted in the FOMA terminal.

Some SIM/USIM cards may not allow name entry. In this case, go to Step 4.

4 Select and enter the phone number.

Up to 26 digits can be entered for a phone number. The number of digits that can be entered varies depending on the SIM/USIM card inserted in the FOMA terminal.

5 Press [完了].

- You can enter only some digits from the start to register in the FDN list. In this case, you can call phone numbers that begin with the same numbers. A wild card (*) can also be used. To enter a wild card, press  (*).

Checking the registered information of the FDN list

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Lock/Security" ► "FDN setting".

2 Select "FDN List".

3 Select a registered name whose information you want to check.

The list may display phone numbers, instead of names, depending on the inserted SIM/USIM card.

4 Check the registered information.

To edit displayed information
Press  [Edit] and enter the PIN2 code.
PIN2 → p.XXX

To delete displayed information
Open the function menu to select "Delete list", and enter the PIN2 code.

Activating the FDN restriction

- If there is no phone number registered in the FDN list, activation of this function restricts all outgoing voice/video phone calls.

1 Select  (Menu) ►  ► "Lock/Security" ► "FDN setting".

2 Select "FDN Mode setting".

3 Select "ON" and enter the PIN2 code.

To cancel the FDN restriction
Select "OFF".
PIN2 code → p.300X



- Even if this function is switched "ON", you can make voice calls to Emergency call numbers that are registered in the SIMUSIM card or the FDN list (110, 119 and 118).

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access	000
Multi Task	000
Using Alarm Notification	000
Using the Alarm Clock Function	000
Using the Schedule Function	000
Making the ToDo List	000
Changing the Menu Display to Enable Quick Operations	000
Storing Your Personal Data	000
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice	000
Displaying the Call Duration During a Call	000
Checking the Call Duration	000
Using Your Terminal as a Calculator	000
Entering a Memo	000
Using the Dictionary	000
How to Use the Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Optional>	000
Receiving a Call Automatically with the Earphone <Optional>	000
Selling the Neuropointer	000
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal	000

Multi Access

Multi access is a function to allow you to simultaneously use a voice call, packet communication and SMS. With this function, you can make multiple communications at the same time such as receiving a mail during a voice call or making a call during i-mode.

- You cannot use the multi access during a videophone call. However, the SMS can be used during a videophone call.
- For functional restrictions during international roaming, see p.XX.

Communication lines available simultaneously

With this multi access function, the FOMA terminal can use the following three lines simultaneously:

Communication sector	Connection
Voice call	One line
i-mode, i-ppp, i-mode mail	Any one line
Packet communication by connecting to PC	
SMS	One line

- For the Multi Access Combination Patterns, see p.350.

- During the multi access (when using i-mode during a voice call), communication charge is required for each communication line.

Receiving a call during communication

When receiving a call from another line during communication, you can make second communication simultaneously without interrupting the first communication.

■ Receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call

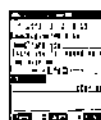
When receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call, the i-mode mail is received on the talking screen. You can read the received i-mode mail without ending the call.

- 1 Hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more.



The i-mode mail received result screen appears.
To switch the screen from the task menu
Switching of the task menu → p.266

- 2 Read the i-mode mail.



How to read i-mode mail → p.181

- 3 Hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more.

The display changes to the talking screen.

NOTE

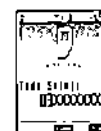
- No ring tone sounds and "Mail" icon notifies by turning on or flashing when you receive an i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free during a voice call.
- If you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call when "Receiving display" (p.224) is set to "Alarm preferred", "M" flashes and the display changes to the i-mode receiving screen. After receiving, press **[Select]** to read the i-mode mail. In addition, the talking screen will reappear if you did not operate for about fifteen minutes from receiving.

■ Receiving a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

When receiving a voice call during i-mode connection, mail transmission or packet communication, the display changes to the incoming voice call screen. You can answer the call without disconnecting these communications.

- You cannot receive videophone calls when you are using i-mode.

- 1 Press **[G]**.



The display changes to the talking screen, and you can talk.
To return to the i-mode screen without answering the call
Hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more.
The other party does not hear the message and is waiting for you to answer the call.

- 2 When you finish the conversation, press **[END]**.



The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.
To return to the i-mode screen while talking
Hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more.

Using another communication during communication

You can implement second communication simultaneously by using another line without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch the display while using the multi access function, hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more, or select a function you want to display from the task menu. → p.266

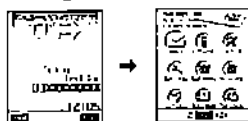
■ Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

Press **[Menu]** during a voice call to display the i-mode menu from the main menu. From the i-mode menu, connect to the i-mode. → p.42

■ Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

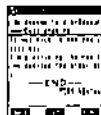
Press **[Menu]** during a voice call to display the mail menu from the main menu. From the mail menu, you can compose and send an i-mode mail.

- 1 Press  (Menu) during a voice call, and select the mail menu.



Menu operations → p.44

- 2 Compose and send an i-mode mail.



Composing/Sending i-mode mail → p.152

- 3 Hold down  (MULTI) for 1 second or more.

The talking screen reappears.

■ Making a voice call during i-mode

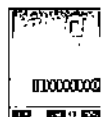
You can make a voice call during i-mode connection or mail transmission without ending i-mode.

- 1 Hold down  (Menu) for 1 second or more during i-mode.



The standby display is displayed.

- 2 Make a voice call.



How to make a voice call → p.70

- 3 When you finish the conversation, press .



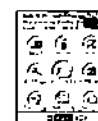
The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.
To return to the i-mode screen while talking
Hold down  (MULTI) for 1 second or more.



● If you make a videophone call during i-mode, a message saying "Disconnecting" will appear, and then you can make a videophone call. When you finish a videophone call, the i-mode screen will reappear.

Multi Task

Multi task is a function to allow you to simultaneously use multiple functions. You can use up to 3 functions simultaneously from the following main menu groups, one function from each group.



Group	Task
Mail group	Menu functions in Mail
i-mode group	Menu functions in i-mode and i-portal
Setting group	Menu functions in Settings and Service
Tool group	Menu functions in Multimedia, Phonebook, Accessory and Own data

- As for i-mode group, Setting group and Tool group, you cannot use two or more functions of the same group simultaneously.
- You are charged for a call charge even while using other functions during a call.
- See p.351 for details on multi task combinations.

Calling up task function

Follow the procedure below to call up the second and third tasks.

- 1 Hold down  (Menu) for 1 second or more.

The standby display appears.

- 2 Select a task of a group that has not been activated.

To call up from the main menu

Press  (Menu), and select the task. → p.44

To call up from the menu number

Enter the menu number of the task you want to call up. → p.354

To call up the mail menu

Press  → p.141

To call up the i-mode menu

Press  → p.32

You can check which tasks are called up with the following icons

-  : Indicates that multiple tasks have been called up.
-  : Indicates that a single task has been called up.
- No icon : No task has been called up.

- The task in the same group has already been called up when you try to call up a task, there are two patterns for switching the task: 1) A message appears asking you whether to switch the task or not; 2) The menu function is automatically switched (while the mail menu or i-mode menu is displayed). If the message appears, select "YES" to call up a new task. In this case, the previous task ends and data being edited is automatically saved. Depending on a task, data being edited may not be saved.
- If you try to startup the fourth task when three tasks are already started simultaneously, a message notifying you that functions cannot operate any more appears.

Switching task

When several tasks are activated, you can switch the task to operate. To switch task, there are two ways: 1) press **[MULTI]** to display the task menu, and then select a task you want to use; and 2) hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more to switch a task by screen.

Switching task with the task menu

When multiple tasks are activated, press **[MULTI]** to display the task menu in a list. If you select a task from the list, the selected task appears on the display.

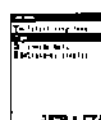
- The standby display is always displayed at the end of the task menu.
- During a voice call, the standby display is not displayed in the task menu.

1 Press **[MULTI]**.

The task menu is displayed in a list.

2 Select the task you want to use.

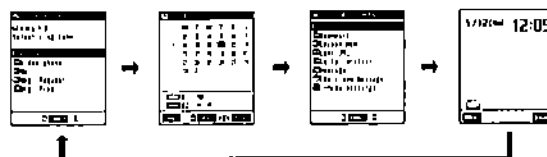
The selected task appears on the screen.



Switching task by screen

Hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more to switch the task in the order they were started. Switching the task does not end a task in operation or disconnect a voice call.

- While the main menu is displayed, the task does not switch even if you hold down **[MULTI]** for 1 second or more.



NOTE

- If you display the standby display during the Multi task, the screen set in "Stand-by display" for "Display setting" appears even if the "4-up pl standby display" (p.86) has been set. The standby display cannot be displayed while other task is operating even if software has the capability to return to the standby display after it is started as Huppli. Depending on software, during an attempt to return to the standby display, a message notifying you that operation cannot be continued any more and the software ends may appear. In addition, the standby display setting may be canceled.

Terminating task

How to end tasks is as follows.

- Switch to the task you want to terminate, and press **[END]**.
- Highlight the task you want to terminate while the task menu is displayed, and press **[END]**.
- Press **[END]** while the task menu is displayed to terminate all tasks.



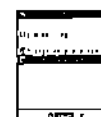
- Turning the FOMA terminal off terminates all tasks.

Using Alarm Notification

Default setting Alarm preferred

You can specify whether the alarm notification of the "Alarm clock" (p.213), "Schedule" (p.216) and "ToDo" (p.228) are set to "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred". If you set the alarm notification to "Operation preferred", an alarm sounds only while the standby display is displayed. Select this setting if you do not want an alarm to sound while you are using the FOMA terminal. If you set the alarm notification to "Alarm preferred", an alarm sounds even while you are using the FOMA terminal or talking. Select this setting if you want an alarm to sound at any time.

1 Select **[Menu]** ► **[Clock]** ► **"Alarm setting"**.



- To give priority to operations
Select "Operation preferred".
- To give priority to alarm notification
Select "Alarm preferred".

Alarm notification operations

When you set alarm notification for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule", and "ToDo", an icon appears indicating that the alarm notification has been set on the standby display. At the specified time, an alarm sounds according to each function.

When you set alarm notification



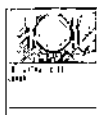
- When you set alarm notification for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule", and "ToDo", an icon appears on the standby display.
- When an alarm is set for today (excluding alarms that have already been activated)
 - "Today" appears.
- When an alarm is set for tomorrow or a later date
 - "Tomorrow" appears.

■ When the specified time is reached

The alarm notification is made for each function with the following operations:



Alarm clock



Schedule*



ToDo*

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule/ToDo
While the standby display is displayed	If "Snooze setting" is set to "OFF", an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes. If "Snooze setting" is set to "ON", an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 1 minute, repeating 6 times at intervals of about 5 minutes. An animation appears on the display and the image window.	An alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes, and an animation appears on the display and the image window.
When the power is off	No alarm notification is provided on the set time. When the set time elapses while the power is off, the alarm set for the day is deleted. The settings for later days remain set.	
During a call	The clock alarm tone (pipipip...) sounds 3 times from the earpiece speaker. An animation appears on the display.	
When receiving/making a call	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as "during a call". For an incoming call, alarm notification is provided when you answer, in the same way as for "during a call".	
During i-mode/mail transmission	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as "while the standby display is displayed".	
During Ir exchange or SD-PIM operation, or OBEX data transfer	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After the transmission is finished, "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby display. → p.212	
When the earphone/microphone is connected	An alarm tone sounds for about 20 seconds from the earphone. After about 20 seconds, an alarm tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker. An animation appears on the display and the image window.	
When "PIN code entry set" is set to "ON" and PIN code entry screen after turning on the power is displayed	Alarm notification is provided in the same way as "while the standby display is displayed". If you clear the alarm notification display, the PIN code entry screen reappears.	Alarm notification is provided after you enter the correct PIN code and the "FOMA" logo appears.
During All lock/PIM lock	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After canceling the All/PIM lock, "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby display (p.212). When the power is off during the All/PIM lock, the power is not turned on even at the specified time and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon does not appear even after canceling the All/PIM lock.	No alarm notification is provided even at the specified time. After canceling the All/PIM lock, "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby display. → p.212

* Animations displayed at the alarm notification of "Schedule" and "ToDo" vary according to icons or categories set.

When the alarm notification settings for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo" are set to the same time, the priority is given as follows. (1) has the top priority.

- ① Alarm clock
- ② ToDo
- ③ Schedule

If alarm notification could not be provided, "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby display.

- At the alarm notification for "Schedule" entries stored as secret data, a secret animation appears with no alarm message. At the alarm notification when the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" is set, the stored message and animation appear. Regardless of whether the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" is set, the specified alarm tone sounds.
- The alarm tone for the "Schedule" and "ToDo" sounds at the volume set in the "Phone/video-phone" of the "Ring volume" (p.79).
- During a call, the clock alarm tone sounds at the volume set in the "Volume" (p.78).
- During the manner mode, the alarm tone sounds at the volume set in the "Manner mode set" (p.136).
- If the "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", an alarm tone sounds with vibration.

■ To stop an alarm tone

■ Alarm tone for Alarm clock

When "Snooze setting" is set to "OFF"

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops and the animation changes to a still image. If you press any key again, two short cancellation tones "pipip" sound and the alarm notification display is cleared.

When "Snooze setting" is set to "ON"

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops, the animation changes to a still image, and the alarm message "Snooze" appears. While "Snooze" is displayed, the alarm notification is provided again after about 5 minutes. If you press (M) while "Snooze" is displayed, two short cancellation tones "pipip" sound and the snooze function is canceled.

■ Alarm tone for Schedule and ToDo

If you press any key, the alarm tone stops, the animation changes to a still image, and the alarm message remains displayed. If you press any key again, the alarm message disappears. However, if you press the side key with the FOMA terminal folded, the alarm notification display remains displayed.

■ When you receive a call during alarm notification

The FOMA terminal stops the alarm notification and incoming call receiving starts. The snooze function for the "Alarm clock" is canceled.

- If the "Keypad sound" (p.163) is set to "OFF", no cancellation tone for the snooze notification sounds.

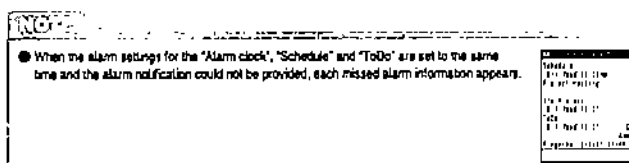
● Checking the contents of alarm notification that could not be provided ●

When alarm notification could not be provided, "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby display. You can check the contents of the missed alarm (Missed alarm) from this desktop icon.

- The latest item from the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "ToDo" items is stored.

- 1 Press on the standby display and select "".
The missed alarm information for the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" appears.
To delete desktop icon
Hold (On) (Off) for 1 second or more.
After desktop icon is deleted, you cannot check the missed alarm information.

- 2 After checking the contents, press (CLR).
The standby display reappears and (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.



Using the Alarm Clock Function

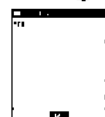
Default setting OFF

You can use your FOMA terminal as an alarm clock. At the set time, the FOMA terminal notifies you by emitting an alarm tone and displaying an animation.

- Up to 3 alarm clock settings can be stored. Only one setting can be enabled.
- Make sure that you set the date and time in the "Set local time" beforehand. → p.65
- During the "PINX lock", you cannot set the Alarm clock.
- For the alarm notification for the Alarm clock, see p.209.

Setting the time for the alarm clock

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Alarm clock".
- 2 Press [Set].



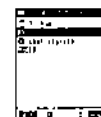
When no alarm clock setting is set



When the alarm clock settings are set

The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.
When no alarm clock setting is set
The alarm clock setting operation starts. Go to Step 4.

- 3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press [Edit].



To change the stored alarm clock setting
Highlight the item with the time set.

- 4 Specify the respective settings in order.

- Time setting : Set the time when an alarm sounds.
- Repeat : Set the repeat pattern for the alarm clock. If "1 time" is set, an alarm sounds only on the day when the alarm clock is set. If "Daily (D)" is set, an alarm sounds daily at the set time. If "Select day (W)" is set, an alarm sounds on selected days of the week.
- Alarm tone : Set the alarm tone from "B&B" folder, your original folder, "Pre-installed" folder ("Clock Alarm" (pipipi, pipipi), "Pattern 1 to 3", "Melody" and "Alarm"), "Voice announce" and "OFF". Selecting a tone → p.164.
- Volume : Select the alarm volume from one of 8 levels: "Stop", "Level 1 to 6" or "Silent". If "Stop" is set, the alarm volume increases gradually. The alarm volume increases from Level 1 to Level 6. If "Silent" is set, no alarm tone sounds.
- Snooze setting : Set whether to set the Snooze (repeated notification) ON/OFF. If "ON" is set, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 1 minute, repeating 8 times at intervals of about 5 minutes. If "OFF" is set, an alarm tone sounds continuously for about 5 minutes.

Changing the alarm clock setting

You can change the alarm clock setting to other stored setting.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Alarm clock".
- 2 Press [Set].
The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.
- 3 Select the item you want to set.
To disable the alarm clock setting
Select "OFF".
To change the settings
Highlight the item you want to change and press [Edit].

Cancelling an alarm clock setting

You can delete a stored alarm clock setting.

- If you delete the current alarm clock setting, the "Alarm clock" setting becomes "OFF".

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Alarm clock".
- 2 Press [Set].
The list screen for stored alarm clock settings appears.
- 3 Highlight the item you want to delete and select "Release this" from the function menu.
To delete all items
Select "Release all".

Schedule

Using the Schedule Function

If you set a scheduled event, an alarm sounds at the specified date and time and a message along with an animated cartoon will let you know about the schedule details. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. You can easily check the set schedules and holidays at the calendar. The calendar can be either monthly or weekly for you to check the number of scheduled events and their details. You can manage your schedule in various ways: storing a regular event such as a regular meeting at the fixed date and time every week, setting an appropriate alarm sound and animation to the contents of a scheduled event, or storing two or more schedules events on the same day.

- Up to 100 scheduled events, 100 holidays and 100 anniversaries can be stored, excluding the number of pre-installed national holidays.
- You can store multiple scheduled events on the same day, but only 1 holiday and 1 anniversary.
- Make sure that you set the date and time in the "Set local time" beforehand. → p.65
- For the alarm notification for the Schedule, see p.209

Switching the schedule display

Default setting Monthly display

The calendar displaying the schedule has the 2 types of displays: "Monthly display" and "Weekly display". If you press to highlight the date you want to check, the number of scheduled events and schedule icons stored in the selected date are displayed.

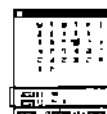
1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Select the item from the function menu.

To switch from monthly display to weekly display
Select "Weekly display".

To switch from weekly display to monthly display
Select "Monthly display".

Calendar display



Displays the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the day and schedule icons.

Date in blue : Saturday
Date in red : Sunday (public holidays)

: Anniversary

: Today

: Scheduled events in the morning have been stored.
 : Scheduled events in the afternoon have been stored.



Displays the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the day, schedule icons and the contents of the events.

- When "Calendar" is set to "Stand-by display" for "Display setting", dates stored as anniversaries are not displayed in in the calendar on the standby display.
- If you store a scheduled event with the "Holiday" icon set, the assigned date is marked with (AM) or (PM) indicating the schedule, not marked in red indicating a holiday.
- Public holidays are based on the "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律(平成13年法律第59号)" (Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and Old-Age Welfare Law) (As of 2001, 2004). If the national holidays are changed or added, store new holidays. Holidays can be changed, deleted and reset them to the original setting.

Storing holidays and anniversaries

You can set birthdays, wedding anniversaries and new national holidays as a holiday or an anniversary. Dates stored as holidays are displayed in red in the calendar. Dates stored as anniversaries are displayed with in the calendar display for the schedule function.

<Example: Setting an anniversary>

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Press [New] and select "Anniversary".

To store a holiday
Select "Holiday".

3 Specify the setting for each item.



- ☒ Date setting : Enter the year, month and day of the holiday or anniversary.
- ☒ Repeat : Set the repeat pattern for a holiday or anniversary. If "1 time" is set, a stored holiday or anniversary is set only for this year. If "annual" () is set, a stored holiday or anniversary is set as an annual holiday or anniversary.
- ☒ Alarm message (the details of a holiday or anniversary) : Enter the details of a holiday or anniversary. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Entering characters → p.238

4 Press [Finish] to store the anniversary.

- If a holiday or anniversary has already stored in the date you set, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.
- If "annual" is set on February 29 in a leap year, the holiday or anniversary is set only for the year containing February 29.

Storing a scheduled event

If you store a trip or an appointment as a scheduled event, an alarm tone and an animation will inform you of your schedule at the specified date and time.

- Scheduled events are not automatically deleted even if their specified date and time have passed. If you try to store the 101st scheduled event, a message notifying you that storing is not possible anymore appears.

Delete unnecessary scheduled events and store a new event again.

- Be sure to enter the "Alarm message (schedule details)". You cannot store the schedule if you do not enter the alarm message.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Press (New) and select "Schedule".

3 Specify the setting for each item.

- | | |
|--|--|
| | : Enter the start date and time of the scheduled event. |
| | : Enter the end date and time of the scheduled event. The dates must be on and after the start time. |
| | : Set the repeat pattern for the scheduled event. If "1 time" is set, an alarm sounds only on the day when the scheduled event is set. If "Daily ()" is set, an alarm sounds daily at the specified time. If "Select day ()" is set, an alarm sounds on selected days of the week. |
| | : Set the type of alarm notification at the start time. If "ON" is set, an alarm notification is provided at the set date and time. If "ON/Set time" is set, enter the advance notification time in the range of 01 to 99 minutes and the alarm notification is provided at the time. If "OFF" is set, no alarm notification is provided even when the specified time has arrived. |
| | : Set the alarm tone from "Inbox" folder, your original folder, "Pre-installed" folder ("Clock Alarm Tone" (pipipi, pipopipi), "Pattern 1 to 3", "Melody", "Alarm", "Voice announce", and "OFF".
Selecting a tone → p.163 |
| | : Enter the message to be displayed at the alarm notification and select the icon. (the details of a scheduled event)
You can enter up to 256 full-width or 512 half-width characters.
Entering characters → p.298 |

4 Press (Finish) to store the scheduled event.

- If you try to store 2 scheduled events at the same date and time, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.
- Only the combination of "Repeat" (Daily/Select day) and "1 time" (no setting) can be stored at the same date and same time. In this case, the event set to "1 time" is given priority.
- When the day for the date set in "Date setting (from)" and the day specified in "Date setting" for "Repeat" are different, the latter is given priority. Therefore a scheduled event is stored on the first day after the date set in "Date setting (from)".
- If you store a scheduled event during a call, no alarm tone will sound while you are selecting an alarm tone.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are not displayed unless you set the FOMA terminal to the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode". → p.201
- When you set the calendar on the standby display, you can store a scheduled event from the calendar. → p.178

Important

The contents of stored schedule may be lost if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise handled in a way that causes such information in memory to be lost. It is the user's responsibility to take a copy of saved schedule contents or keep them by using a data link software (p.470) or a miniSD memory card (p.357). Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.

Setting your favorite image as a user icon

You can set an image or an animation stored in the "Image" (p.294) as a user icon. The user icons you set will be displayed as "" to "" on the icon selection screen. If you set a user icon, the image or animation you set appears at alarm notification. In addition, "" appears on the Image window.

- Up to 5 user icons can be set.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Select "User Icon settg." from the function menu.

3 Select "Not stored".

To change a user icon that has been set

Select the item for which the user icon has been set.

To cancel all user icons

Select "Release all".

This operation can be made only when you have set some user icon.

4 Select the folder in which you saved images.

If there are your original folders, you can select an image from them.

Selecting the images → p.294

To cancel the user icon of the selected item

Select "Release this".

Only when you select the item for which the user icon has been set, you can release.

5 Select the item you want to set.

To preview

Highlight the item you want to display and press (Play).

To switch to the title list display

Select "Title" from the function menu.

To switch to the 4-image display

Select "Picture" from the function menu.

- When an image set to a user icon is larger than the display, the image is displayed in the area set in "XOOL" for the "Image".

- If a user icon you want to change has already been used as a schedule icon, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears. If you overwrite the user icon, the schedule icon using it is also changed to "".

- If a user icon you want to cancel has already been used as a schedule icon, a message confirming whether you cancel it or not appears. If you cancel the user icon, the schedule icon using it is also changed to "".

Checking the contents of a scheduled event

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored scheduled event.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Select the date on which the scheduled event you want to check has been stored.



The list screen of the stored scheduled events is displayed.

3 Select the item you want to check.

In the list screen, the following icons appear:

- ☑ : Indicates that a scheduled event has been stored with the set schedule icon.
- 📅 : Indicates that a holiday has been stored.
- 🎂 : Indicates that an anniversary has been stored.
- 🔔 : Indicates that alarm notification has been set.
- 🕒 : Indicates that daily repetition has been set.
- 📅 : Indicates that selected-day repetition has been set.
- 🔄 : Indicates that annual repetition has been set.

4 Check the contents.



The schedule detailed screen



The holiday detailed screen



The anniversary detailed screen



- The schedules set as secret data cannot be displayed unless you switch to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Displaying scheduled events by icons

You can display scheduled events, holidays or anniversaries by icon set at storing.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".
- 2 Select "Icon display" from the function menu.
- 3 Select an icon.



A list of the scheduled events for which the selected icon has been set appears.

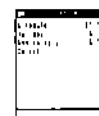
- In the list screen of scheduled events by icon, repeated scheduled events ("D" or "W") appear as a single event, and the date of the next closest scheduled event appears.

Checking the number of stored schedules

You can check the number of schedules stored and the remaining number that can be stored.

- The number of stored secret data is included in the number of stored schedules.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".
- 2 Select "No. of schedules" from the function menu.
- 3 Check the number of stored schedules.



- Schedule** : Displays the number of stored schedules.
Number of stored schedules/Maximum number of schedules that can be stored
- Holiday** : Displays the number of stored holidays.
Number of stored holidays/Maximum number of holidays that can be stored
- Anniversary** : Displays the number of stored anniversaries.
Number of stored anniversaries/Maximum number of anniversaries that can be stored
- Secret** : Displays the number of schedules stored as secret data.

- Only when the "Secret mode" or the "Secret only mode" is set, their stored number will appear on the display.

Changing the contents of a scheduled event

- 1 Display the detailed screen of the scheduled event you want to change.

How to display the detailed screen → p.222

- 2 Press (Edit).



How to edit the schedule → p.218

Resetting public holidays

Even if you enter public holidays that have already been registered, you can reset them to the original setting. Go to "Monthly display" or "Weekly display" and select "Reset holiday" from the function menu.

- You can also change the schedule by pressing the [Edit] at Schedule list screen.

Copying a scheduled event

When you store a new scheduled event, you can copy a similar one from the stored schedules. All the contents of the copied source are copied without change except "Date (from)".

1 Display the detailed screen of the copy source.

How to display the detailed screen → p.222

2 Select "Copy" from the function menu.

3 Store a new scheduled event.

First, the start time setting screen appears. After the start time is set, the schedule entering screen appears. Set the items as necessary.
How to store the schedule → p.218

- Even if the repetition setting for the copy source Schedule is set to "Daily ()" or "Select day ()", the setting is changed to "1 time (no repeat)" for the copy destination.

Deleting scheduled events

You can delete stored scheduled events, holidays or anniversaries one by one or all at once.

Follow the procedure below to delete scheduled events.

Delete pattern	Description	Executable screen
Delete this	Only one selected item is deleted.	List screen Details screen
Delete past	All items before the selected date are deleted. Select from "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All".	Calendar screen List screen Details screen
Delete select	Mark the checkbox of the item you want to delete. Only selected items are deleted.	List screen Details screen
Delete all	All the contents of selected items are deleted. Select from "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All".	Calendar screen

- Even if you select "Delete past" or "Delete select", the holidays stored at purchase are not deleted. If you select "Delete all", the holidays are reset to the default setting.

Deleting one scheduled event

1 Display the list screen of the date of the scheduled event you want to delete.

How to display the list screen → p.222

2 Highlight the item you want to delete and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

Deleting only selected scheduled events

1 Display the list screen of the date of the scheduled event you want to delete.

How to display the list screen → p.222

2 Select "Delete select" from the function menu, and then select the scheduled events you want to delete.

Deleting all scheduled events

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Schedule".

2 Select the date, and select "Delete past" from the function menu.

To delete all scheduled events
Select "Delete all" from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to delete.

To delete all the items
Select "All".

- If you try to select Delete this or Delete select for the scheduled event with the repetition setting ("Daily" or "Select day"), a message confirming whether you delete the event or not appears. Select "YES" to delete all the repetition events.
- If you select Delete past for the scheduled event with the repetition setting ("Daily" or "Select day"), all scheduled events up to the day before are deleted. The scheduled events on the selected day or later are not deleted.

Making the ToDo List

If you store your planned events, an alarm sounds at the specified date and time and an alarm message and an animation inform you of your schedule. The icons for planned events after due date are displayed in red. You can manage your schedule in various ways: dividing your planned events into 8 categories such as the event details and due date, assigning priorities to events to confirm them in order of importance, or extracting events that are in a specific status such as "Plan" or "Completion".

- Up to 100 ToDo entries can be stored.
- Make sure that you set the date and time in the "Set local time" beforehand. → p.65
- For the alarm notification for the ToDo, see p.209
- If you paste a ToDo entry as a desktop icon on the standby display, you can quickly call up the function. → p.170

Storing planned events

If you store your important business such as a meeting or trip in the ToDo, an alarm tone and an animation will inform you of your schedule at the specified date and time.

- Be sure to enter the planned event. You cannot set the ToDo if you do not enter the planned event.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Press [New].

When a planned event is already stored
Select "New" from the function menu.

3 Specify the setting for each item.

- Edit ToDo : Set the details of the planned event. Up to 100 full-width or 200 half-width characters can be entered. Entering characters → p.298
- Due date : Set the due date of the planned event. To directly enter a due date with the keypad, select "Enter date". To select a due date from the calendar, select "Choose date". To set no due date, select "No date".
- Priority : Set the priority of the planned event.
- Category : Set the category of the planned event. When the category is set, planned events can be displayed by category.
- Alarm : Set the type of alarm notification at the due date. If "ON" is set, an alarm notification is provided at the set date and time. If "ON/Set time" is set, enter the advance notification time in the range of 01 to 99 minutes and the alarm notification is provided at the time. If "OFF" is set, no alarm notification is provided even when the due date has arrived.
- Clock Alarm Tone : Select the alarm tone from "Inbox" folder, your original folder, "Pre-installed" folder ("Clock Alarm Tone (pipipi, pipipi)", "Pattern 1 to 3", "Melody", "Alarm"), "Voice announce" or "OFF".
Selecting the sound → p.163

4 Press [Finish] to store the planned event.

NOTE

- If you store a planned event during a voice call, no alarm tone will sound while you are selecting an alarm tone.

Important

There is a possibility that saved text messages will be deleted if the POMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced, etc. Take a copy of saved ToDo contents or keep them by using a data link software (p.478) or a miniSD memory card (p.357). The DoCoMo group shall not be held liable for any loss of saved data.

Checking a planned event

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored planned event.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Select the planned event you want to check.



Indicates the priority status.
Indicates the status of the planned event.

3 Check the contents.



NOTE

- If the due date for an incomplete planned event has already passed the current date/time, the icon for that planned event will turn red. However, that is not the case when the status is set to "Completion".

Changing the way planned events are displayed

You can display stored planned events by category, sort them in chronological order or in the order they were stored, or extract only events that are in a specific status. It is useful for displaying only events in a specific category or displaying Incompleted events preferentially.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Select "Category display" or "Sort/Filter" from the function menu.

To display events by category

Select "Category display" to choose the category of your choice.

To sort events or extract events in a specific status only

Select "Sort/Filter" to sort or choose the way of filter.

NOTE

- When events are sorted by "By due date", they are sorted in the due date order from the oldest.
- When events are sorted by "By due date" or "By completed", events with no due date or completion date are displayed last.
- When events are sorted by "By due date" or "By completed" and the same due date or completion date is set to multiple events, they are displayed by priority beginning with the highest event. Furthermore, if their priority is the same, they are displayed in the order in which they were stored.

Changing the status of a planned event

You can set the status of planned events from among "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". When you finish your planned event and alarm notification is not necessary anymore, change its status to "Completion".

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to set and select "Change status" from the function menu.

3 Select an item you want to set.

When "Completion" is selected

Set the completion date. Select an entry method from "Enter date", "Choose date" or "No date", and then set the completion date.

- You can also set the status from the ToDo detailed screen by selecting "Change status" from the function menu.

Changing the contents of a planned event

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to change, and then press [Edit].

Editing ToDo entries → p.229

- You can also change the contents of a planned event by pressing the  [Edit] at the detailed screen of a planned event.

Deleting planned events

You can delete stored planned events one by one or all at once.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "ToDo".

2 Highlight the planned event you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To select multiple events and delete all of them

Select "Delete select" and select the events you want to delete.

To delete only events with the status set to "Completion"

Select "Delete completed".

To delete all events

Select "Delete all".

- You can also delete planned events on the ToDo detailed screen from the function menu.

Changing the Menu Display to Enable Quick Operations

You can change the menu display that suits your convenience, by changing the way menus are displayed or storing an original menu.

Setting the way menus are displayed

<Menu display set>

Default setting Guidance: ON Menu display: Detail

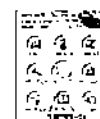
You can set whether to display or not the guidance for a main menu icon selected on the main menu item selection screen, or whether to display the "Settings" menu detail items (functions) in "List" or "Detail".

With each setting, the screen is displayed as follows:

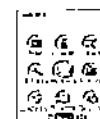
- The "Original menu" is displayed in "List" regardless of the setting of this function.

About Guidance display

About Menu display



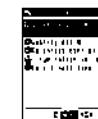
"ON"



"OFF"



"Detail"



"List"

1 Select **[Menu]** ► **[Display]** ► "Menu display set".

2 Select the item you want to set.

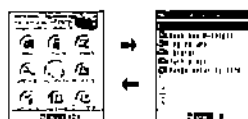
- To set the guidance display for high level items
Select "Guidance".
Select "display the guidance/not display the guidance" (ON/OFF).
- To set how the detail items are displayed
Select "Menu display".
Select the detail item display from "Detail" or "List".

Displaying your original menu

You can display the functions you stored with the "Original menu" (shown below). Select a function from the original menu to startup the selected function.

- The original menu is displayed in "List".
- If you paste the original menu as a desktop icon on the standby display, you can quickly call up the function. →p.170

1 **[Menu]** ► **[Menu]**



Pressing **[Menu]** switches between the main menu and the original menu.

NOTE

- When you return to the standby display from the original menu, or when you return to the standby display from the original menu after calling up a function from the original menu and performing operations, press **[Menu]** to display the original menu.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether you store functions to the original menu or not appears.

Creating your original menu

<Original menu>

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code
-----------------	--

If you store your frequently used functions, you can quickly call them up from the "Original menu". Since you do not have to select items in turn from the main menu, the high level item → middle item → detail item, you can easily start up a function you want to use.

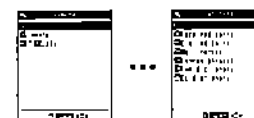
- Up to 10 items can be stored in the original menu.
- You can store the following functions in the original menu: The high level items of "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-cuppli" and the middle name and detail items of "Settings", "Multimedia", "Accessory", "Service", "Phonebook" and "Own data".
- You cannot store the same function.

1 Select **[Menu]** ► **[Display]** ► "Original menu".

2 Select <Not stored>.

- To change a stored function
Select the item for which the function is stored.
- To cancel a stored function
Highlight the item you want to cancel, and select "Release this" from the function menu.
- To cancel all stored functions
Select "Release all" from the function menu.
- To reset to the default setting
Select "Reset original menu" from the function menu.

3 Select a category for the menu.



4 Select the functions you want to store.

- When the category is "i-mode"
You can select only from among the high level items of "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-cuppli".

- You can change or delete the pre-installed functions.
- If you try to store a function in the item already being used, a message confirming whether you overwrite it or not appears.

Storing Your Personal Data

Own number

Default setting Your phone number only

You can store your profile such as your name, home phone number, and mail addresses, etc. If you set your profile, it can be used to check the owner of the FOMA terminal or quote the data entered in the text entry (edit) display.

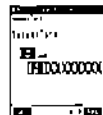
- Your own number cannot be changed or deleted.
- Your private information other than the own number is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you insert another FOMA card, your private information you stored other than the own number appears.

Storing your personal data

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Own number".

You can display "Own number" by pressing (Menu) .

- 2 Press [Edit] and enter the Security code.



Security code → p.192

- 3 Specify the setting for each item.

- Name** : Enter your name by "Last name" and "First name". Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the name using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Entering characters → p.298
- Reading** : Enter the reading of your name. Entering your "family name" and "first name" automatically enters the reading. Correct the reading as necessary. Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for the reading using half-pitch katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Phone No.** : Store additional phone numbers other than the own number. You can store up to 3 numbers or enter up to 26 digits (including "+").
When a new phone number is stored, a new item "Not stored" appears on the edit screen of private information. If you select this item, you can add another phone number.
- Mail address** : Enter the mail address and select an icon. You can store up to 3 addresses and enter up to 50 digits in half-pitch alphabetic characters, numbers, or symbols.
When the first mail address is stored, a new item "Not stored" appears on the edit screen of private information. If you select this item, you can add another mail address.
- ZIP code** : Enter your zip code and address. Enter the 7-digit zip code using half-pitch numbers. For the address, up to 46 full-pitch or 92 half-pitch characters can be entered using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Memorandums** : Enter a memo. Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters can be entered for a memo using kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
- Image** : Select a still image that you want to display on your personal profile from the data stored in "Image". → p.294

- 4 Press [Finish] to store your private information.

- When storing your mail address, storing your i-mode mail address as the first mail address is recommended. Pressing (Menu) displays the own number as well as the first mail address. Therefore you can check both your own number and mail address at the same time.
- Your i-mode mail address can be checked from the i-mode optional settings. → p.236
- Even if you change your mail address or store your secret code, the mail address in this profile cannot automatically change. Update the mail address in this profile.
- When a stored image exceeds the image display area in the Own number screen, the image is reduced with the same aspect ratio. If the image is smaller than the image display area, the display is centered.

Viewing your personal data

When this function is started, only your name, own number and the first mail address can be displayed. Enter your security code to display all of your personal data.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Own number".

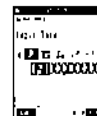
You can also display your name, your own number and the first mail address by pressing (Menu) and .

- 2 Select "Display all data" from the function menu, and then enter the security code.



Security code → p.192

- 3 Press to check the information in your personal data.



To copy personal data

Display the item you want to copy, and select "Copy name" or "Copy phone No./Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy memorandums" from the function menu. You can paste the copied data on the character entry screen. → p.316

To delete personal data

Display the item you want to delete, and select "Erase phone No./Erase mail add./Erase address/Erase Memorandums/Delete image" from the function menu.

NOTE

- You can delete the first mail address without displaying all of your personal data, but entering the security code is required.

Resetting your personal data

You can reset (delete) your personal data other than your own number to return to the default setting.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Own number".

- 2 Select "Reset" from the function menu, and then enter the security code.

A message is displayed asking you whether to reset your personal data.

Security code → p.192

When all data is displayed

You do not have to enter the security code

- 3 Select "YES".

To cancel resetting

Select "NO".

NOTE

- Even if you reset your personal data with this function, your actual mail address is not reset. To reset your actual mail address to "phone number 0 docomo.ne.jp", perform "Reset Mail Address" in i-mode option settings. → p.236

Voice memo

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

There are 2 voice memo functions: the "Voice memo during standby" function, which lets you record your own voice while the standby display is displayed, and the "Voice memo during a call", which lets you record the other party's voice during a voice/videophone call. It is useful for making a memo of a small task in voice.

- You can record only one Voice memo: either a voice memo during standby or a voice memo during a call.
- The recorded voice memo is overwritten every time a new Voice memo is recorded.
- The maximum recording time is about 20 seconds.
- For how to play or delete a recorded voice memo, see p.245

Recording your voice

By using "Voice memo", you will be able to record your own voice.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Voice memo".

A message is displayed asking you whether to start recording.

- 2 Select "YES".

To cancel recording of voice memo
Select "NO".

- 3 Record a voice memo.



When a short beep sounds, talk to the microphone. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, a short double beep "pipi" sounds. "Recording" disappears and the previous display reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press (Stop), (Memo/Check) or (End call).

If you press (End call), the standby display reappears, but the recorded voice is saved.

NOTE

- During a call, "Voice memo during standby" changes to "Voice memo during a call".

Recording the other party's voice during a call

You can record the caller's voice during a voice or videophone call. Simply pressing the key one time records necessary information quickly.

- 1 Hold down (Memo/Check) for 1 second or more during a call.



A short beep sounds and recording starts. A short beep sounds again about 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, a short double beep "pipi" sounds. "Recording" disappears and the talking screen reappears.

To cancel the recording after it has started

Press (Stop), (Memo/Check) or (End call).

If you press (End call), the call also ends.

Display

- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo", or you use other functions during recording, the recording stops.

Call time display

Displaying the Call Duration During a Call

Default setting ON

You can set whether to display the current call duration during a voice or videophone call.

- When the call duration exceeds "19h59m59s", the count will start from "00s".
- The displayed call duration is a rough estimation, so it may differ from the actual call duration.
- The communication time for i-mode and packet communication is not counted.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Call data" ► "Call time display".

To display the call duration during a call
Select "ON".

Not to display call duration during a call
Select "OFF".

Checking the Call Duration

You can check the call duration of your last call and the total call duration for voice and videophone calls, and reset them to "0". It is useful for checking the total call duration for voice calls and digital calls separately or checking the monthly total call duration.

Checking the call duration

You can display and check the call duration of your last call, the total call duration and the date and time when the call duration was last reset for voice calls and videophone calls.

- When the last call duration and the all calls duration exceed "19h59m59s", the count will start from "00s".
- The displayed call duration is a rough estimation, so it may differ from the actual call duration.
- The communication time for i-mode and packet communication is not included in the call duration.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Call data" ► "Call duration".



Last call duration : Displays an estimation of the call duration on your immediate last made or received call.

All calls duration : Displays the total call duration since the last reset (reset to "00s"). "Talk" indicates the total call duration of voice calls, while "Digital" indicates that of videophone calls.

Last reset date : Displays the date and time when the call duration was last reset.

- If the power is turned off or the FOMA card is removed, the display of the last call duration becomes "00s".
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the all calls duration information.
- The last reset date shows "11-11-11" in case of default or when date and time are not set in the "Set local time".

Resetting the call duration

You can reset the last call duration and the all calls duration displayed in the "Call duration" to zero.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Call data" ► "Reset call duration", and then enter the security code.

Security code ---p.192

- 2 Press (Select) and select "YES".

To cancel resetting
Press (Select) and select "NO".

Note

- You can check the date and time when the call duration was last reset on the "Call duration".

Calculator

Using Your Terminal as a Calculator

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform four simple operations (+, -, ×, ÷). The calculator display indicates the Multi-function keys and its surrounding so that pressing the key of the FOMA terminal highlights the corresponding key on the display. Use the keypad to enter numbers.

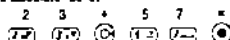
- Up to 10-digit numbers can be displayed. Up to 9 digits after the decimal point can be displayed.
- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, "E" appears.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Calculator".

- 2 Calculate.



To calculate "23-57"



First pressing to enter numbers changes to minus figure. Next, entering +, -, ×, ÷ displays "-" before a figure. However, pressing to enter numbers after +, -, ×, ÷ cancels +, -, ×, ÷ entered and is calculated as subtraction.

The numbers you entered and the result appear.

Note

- Press (CLR) or (OFF) to clear the calculation result or the numeric figures entered. (OFF) key is displayed as immediately after any of "+", "-", "×", "÷" or "=" is entered, and as during the entry of numerical figures or a decimal point.

Text memo

Entering a Memo

You can make a simple message as a text memo. A stored text memo can be pasted into the contents of the Schedule or into the body of a mail.

- Up to 10 text memos can be stored.
- Up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters can be entered in a text memo.

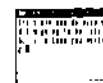
Storing a text memo

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Text memo".

- 2 Highlight <Not stored> and press (Edit).

To change the contents of a stored text memo
Highlight the text memo you want to change, and then press (Edit).

- 3 Enter the text.



Entering characters ---p.298

- You can also edit/change the text memo by selecting "Edit" from the function menu.

Important

There is a possibility that saved text memos will be deleted if the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced, etc. Take a copy of saved text memo contents or keep them by using a data link software (p.470) or a miniSD memory card (p.357). The DoCoMo group shall not be held liable for any loss of saved data.

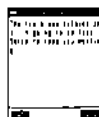
Checking the contents of a text memo

You can display the detailed screen to check the contents of a stored text memo.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Text memo".

- 2 Select the item you want to check.

3 Check the contents.



To check the created date and time
Select "Text memo info" from the function menu.
Make date, Last modify date and Category can be checked.
To categorize text memos
Select "Category" from the function menu.
To store the contents of a text memo in the schedule
Select "Edit schedule" from the function menu.
Storing the schedule → p.218

To send the contents of a text memo with an i-mode mail
Select "Compose message" from the function menu.
Composing i-mode mail → p.152



- You can also select the function menu from the text memo list screen.

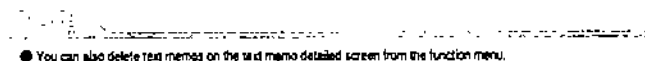
Deleting text memos

You can delete stored text memos one by one or all at once.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Text memo".

2 Highlight the text memo you want to delete, and select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To select multiple text memos and delete all of them
Select "Delete selected" and select the text memos you want to delete.
To delete all text memos
Select "Delete all".



- You can also delete text memos on the text memo detail screen from the function menu.

Using the Dictionary

The dictionary consists of 3 parts: English-Japanese, Japanese-English and Japanese.

- You can quickly call up the dictionary by placing its desktop icon on the standby display. → p.170
- When the search does not come up with any words that match the entered search word, a list of similar words is displayed.

Starting up the dictionary

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Dictionary".

2 Select "Enter word".

To search a word stored in the search record
Select "Reference history" and then a word. Go to Step 4.
To paste the dictionary function on the desktop
Open the function menu and select "Add desktop icon".

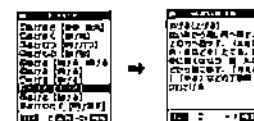
3 Enter a word to search and press [Set].

Up to 32 full-pitch/64 half-pitch characters can be entered.
The dictionary can search words in hiragana, katakana (full-pitch/half-pitch), kana, and alphabet (full-pitch/half-pitch).
Entering characters → p.300

4 Select a dictionary.

In the English-Japanese dictionary, the search target should be English words only. In the Japanese-English and Japanese dictionaries, the search target should be other than English words.

5 Select a word from the search result list.



To scroll up/down the list
Press while the list is displayed, or use the Neuroportlet.
To display the word above or below
Press while the word is displayed, or use the Neuroportlet.
To search the entered word in another dictionary
Open the function menu and select "Refer to".



- By selecting "Copy" from the function menu, you can copy the letters in of the highlighted word when it is a list display. In a detail display, you need to specify the area to copy. Copying characters → p.319
- Up to 10 search records can be saved in "Reference history". After 10 search records have been saved, the oldest record is automatically deleted each time a new search record is saved. To delete the search record(s), display the search record list and highlight the search you want to delete. Then open the function menu to select "Delete this" or "Delete all".

Conducting a further search from a search result detail screen

Search a word selected on the reference result detail screen.

- Search a word in the dictionary to display the "Detail" screen. → p.XXX
- Open the function menu and select "Re-reference".
- Press to move the cursor and press (始点) when it is placed at the beginning of the word you want to search.
- Press to highlight the entire word. Press (終点) at the end of the word.
- Select a dictionary type to run a search. On the reference result screen, select a word and press [select].

How to Use the Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Optional>

If you use the earphone/microphone with switch, you can hear the other party's voice through it so that you can talk without worrying about voice leaking out.
To connect the earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone socket of the terminal and plug the earphone/microphone with switch. →p.34

Using an earphone

- Plug the earphone/microphone securely into the FOMA terminal. If not, you may not hear any sound.
- Note that an incoming call may be answered if you connect the earphone/microphone after ringing starts.
- Do not wrap the cord of the earphone/microphone around the FOMA terminal. The radio reception level may be reduced.
- A snap sound may be emitted at the moment of power-on. This phenomenon is not a failure.
- If the plug of the earphone/microphone is not firmly inserted, you may hear a beep tone during a call. This phenomenon is not a failure.

Receiving a call with the earphone/microphone with switch

While you are using the earphone/microphone with switch, you can answer an incoming voice or videophone call by only pressing the earphone switch.

- The following earphone/microphone with switch is available for use:
 - Flat-type earphone/microphone with switch (optional)
 - Earphone/microphone with switch P001/P002 (optional) and earphone/jack conversion adapter P001 (optional) set
- The earphone/microphone with switch can also be used while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- Regardless of the "Keypad sound" (p.168) setting, a tone for connecting and disconnecting a call sounds.

1 When receiving a call, press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.

Voice calls

You will hear a short beep before you can answer the call.

Videophone calls

You will hear a short beep before you can respond to the videophone call in a substitute image. Press  to switch to camera view.

2 When you finish the conversation, hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or more.

A short double beep "pepi" sounds and the call is disconnected.

To end a call with the FOMA terminal

Press .

- Even when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected, you can still respond to the phone call by using the FOMA terminal key. Press  to answer the voice call. Press  to answer the videophone call with the camera view. Press  to answer the videophone call with a substitute image.
- You can mute the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected by "Earphone". However, the ring tone of remote monitoring incoming calls and the shutter sound of the camera sound from the speaker.
- You can answer an incoming call automatically without pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch if "Automatic answer" is set to "ON". →p.260
- When the "Ring volume" for the "Phone/Videophone" is set to "Silent" or during the manner mode, no ring tone sound. However, if the manner mode is set to "Original" and other than "Silent" is set to "Phone vol.", the ring tone sounds.
- Holding down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or more during a call does not switch to the handsfree mode. Note that the call is disconnected if you hold down the switch for 1 second or more.
- Subscribers to the "Call waiting" service (p.273) can use the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch to answer a second call while you are talking. However, you cannot end the call with this switch.
- Do not press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch repeatedly. This may cause calls to be received automatically.

Receiving a Call Automatically with the Earphone <Optional>

Default setting Automatic answer: OFF Ringing time: 5 seconds

When the earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. are connected, you can automatically receive incoming voice or videophone calls without pressing the switch.

- To receive a call, set the ringing time in the range of 1 to 120 seconds.
- The ringing time of Automatic answer cannot be set to the same time as that of the "Record message" or "Remote monitor".
- Calls from the following phone numbers are not received automatically:
 - Phone numbers for which "Call rejection" is set
 - Phone numbers for which "Voice mail" is set
 - Phone numbers other than those for which "Call acceptance" is set
 - Phone numbers for which "Call forwarding" is set
- Calls are not automatically received during 54K data communication.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "External option" ► "Automatic answer".

To activate the Automatic answer

Select "ON" and set "Ringing time" in the range of 1 to 120 seconds

To deactivate the Automatic answer

Select "OFF".

2

- When this function is set to "OFF", you can answer a call by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.
- When a videophone call is automatically received by this function, the substitute image is displayed at the other party's side. Pressing  during a videophone call switches between the substitute image and the camera view.
- To give a higher priority to the Automatic answer over the "Voice mail" service (p.271) or "Call forwarding" service (p.278) when the service is activated together with this function, set the shorter ringing time for this function than that for the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service.